Pioneer *sound.vision.soul*

Operation Manual

HDD AV NAVIGATION HEAD UNIT

AVIC-HD3II

English

Contents

- The screens shown in the examples may differ from the actual screens.
- The actual screens may be changed without notice for performance and function improvements.

01 Introduction

Manual Overview **7**
- How to use this manual **7**
- Overview for each chapter **7**
- Terminology **8**
- About the definition of terminology **9**
- Colour difference of the map display between day and night **9**

Licence Agreement **10**
- PIONEER AVIC-HD3II **10**
- Tele Atlas End User Licensing Terms **11**
- About the Data for the Map Database **15**
- Copyright **15**
- About Gracenote® **15**

02 Before Using the System

Important Safety Information **17**
Additional Safety Information **18**
- To ensure safe driving **18**

Features (Characteristics of this software) **18**
Notes for Hard Disk Drive **19**
- Recording equipment and copyright **19**
- Notes when writing data to the hard disk drive at low temperature **20**
- Points about recording **20**
- Data saved or recorded by the customer **20**

In case of trouble **20**
Visit Our Web site **20**

03 Basic Operation

Flow from Startup to Termination **21**
How to Use Navigation Menu Screens **21**
- Displaying the Navigation menu **21**
- Navigation menu overview **22**

Basic Navigation **23**
- Basic flow of operation **23**
- Calculating your destination by using Address Search **23**
- Checking and modifying the route **27**
- When the route guidance starts **28**

Cancelling the Route Guidance **28**
Modifying the Route Calculation Conditions **28**
- Items that users can operate **29**

Checking the Current Route **30**
- Checking the route by text **30**
- Checking the entire route overview on the map **30**

Editing Waypoints **31**
- Adding a waypoint **31**
- Deleting a waypoint **32**
- Sorting waypoints **32**
- Skipping a waypoint **32**

04 How to Read the Map Display

How to Use the Map **33**
- Switching the view mode **33**
- How to view the map of the current location **33**
- Roads without turn-by-turn instructions **37**
- Changing the scale of the map **37**
- House numbers displayed on the map (MOSCOW only) **37**
- Scroll the map to the location you want to see **38**
- Shortcut menu **39**

Setting the Vehicle Dynamics Display **39**

Contents

05 Modifying Map Configurations
Entering the Map Menu **41**
Setting the Item on the Map Screen **41**
Selecting the Shortcut **42**
Displaying POI on the Map **43**
Viewing the Map Colour Legend **44**
Changing the View Mode for the Navigation Map **44**
Setting the Map Colour Change between Day and Night **44**
Changing the Setting of Navigation Interruption Screen **44**
Changing the Map Colour **45**

06 Setting a Route to Your Destination
Searching for Points of Interest (POI) **46**
– Searching for a POI directly from the name of the facilities **46**
– Searching for POIs by specifying a category first **47**
– Searching for POIs by specifying a city name first **48**
Finding a POI in the Vicinity **48**
– Searching for the facilities around the current position **48**
– Searching for the facilities around the scroll cursor **49**
Finding Your Destination by Specifying the Postcode **50**
Route Calculation to Your Home Location or to Your Favourite Location **50**
Selecting Destination from “Destination History” and “Address Book” **51**
Registering/deleting POI Shortcuts **51**
– Registering a POI shortcut **51**
– Deleting a POI shortcut **52**

07 Registering and Editing Locations
Registering Locations Overview **53**
Registering your home and your favourite location **53**
Registering a Location into “Address Book” **54**
– Registering a location by scroll mode **54**
– Registering a location by “Address Book” **54**
– Viewing “Address Book” **55**
– Editing the entry in “Address Book” **55**
– Deleting the entry in “Address Book” **59**
Operating “Destination History” **59**
– Deleting the entry in “Destination History” **60**

08 Using Hands-free Phoning
Hands-free Phoning Overview **61**
– Preparing communication devices **61**
– Setting up for hands-free phoning **62**
– Receiving a phone call **64**
– Making a phone call **65**
– Transferring the phone book **67**
– Registering a phone number in “Dial Favourites” **68**
– Editing the entry in “Phone Book” **68**
– Editing the received call or dialled number history **70**

09 Modifying the General Settings for Navigation Functions
Entering Settings Menu **72**
Setting the Volume for Guidance and Phone **72**
Customising the Regional Settings **72**
– Changing the language for navigation guidance and menu **72**
– Setting the time difference **73**
– Setting the keyboard layout **73**
– Changing the unit between km and miles **73**
– Changing the virtual speed of the vehicle **74**

Contents

Checking the Setting Related with Hardware **74**
- Checking the connections of leads and installation positions **74**
- Checking sensor learning status and driving status **75**
- Correcting the installation angle **76**
- Checking the device and version information **76**
- Checking the hard disk information **76**

Registering the Home Location and Favourite Location **77**
Changing the Background Picture **77**
- Limitations for importing pictures **78**
- Precautions when changing the Splash Screen **79**

Using the Demonstration Guidance **79**
Correcting the Current Location **79**
Restoring the Default Setting **80**

10 Using the AV Source (Built-in DVD Drive and Radio)
Basic Operation **81**
- Switching the Audio operation screen **81**
- Selecting a source **81**
- About Steering Remote Control **82**
- Viewing the audio operation screen and displaying the Audio Settings menu **83**

Operating a Music CD **83**
- Selecting [CD] as the source **83**
- About auto hard disk recording **84**
- Screen configuration **84**
- Touch panel key operation **85**

Operating the CD-ROM (MP3 disc) **85**
- Selecting [ROM] as the source **86**
- Screen configuration **86**
- Touch panel key operation **86**
- Notes on playing MP3 disc **88**

Operating the DVD **88**
- Selecting [DVD] as the source **88**
- Screen configuration **88**
- Touch panel key operation **89**
- Searching for a desired scene, starting playback from a specified time **90**
- Entering the numerical commands **90**

Operating the Radio (FM) **91**
- Selecting [FM] as the source **91**
- Screen configuration **91**

Touch panel key operation **91**
Storing the strongest broadcast frequencies **93**
Tuning in strong signals **93**
Using radio text **93**
- Displaying radio text **93**
- Storing and recalling radio text **93**

Searching for an RDS station by PTY information **94**
Receiving traffic announcements **94**
Using news programme interruption **95**
- About interruption icon status (e.g. TRFC icon) **95**

Receiving PTY alarm broadcasts **95**
- Selecting alternative frequencies (AF) **95**
- Using PI Seek **96**
- Using Auto PI Seek for preset stations **96**
- Limiting stations to regional programming **96**
- PTY list **97**

Operating the Radio (AM) **98**
- Selecting [AM] as the source **98**
- Screen configuration **98**
- Touch panel key operation **98**
- Storing the strongest broadcast frequencies **99**
- Tuning in strong signals **99**

11 Using the AV Source (Music Library)
Music Library Recording **100**
- Recording all tracks in a CD **101**

Contents

– Recording a CD manually **101**
– Recording only the first track of a CD **101**
– Stopping CD recording **102**
– Notes on CD recording **102**

Music Library Play **102**
– Selecting [LIBRARY] as the source **102**
– Screen configuration **102**
– Touch panel key operation **103**
– Creating a playlist with a customised order **106**
– Editing a playlist or tracks **107**
– Assigning another candidate for title information **113**

12 Using the AV Source (M-CD, iPod®, TV)

Operating the Multi-CD Player **114**
– Selecting [M-CD] as the source **114**
– Screen configuration **114**
– Touch panel key operation **114**

Operating the iPod® **115**
– Selecting [iPod] as the source **115**
– Screen configuration **116**
– Touch panel key operation **116**
– Browsing for a song **117**

Operating the TV tuner **117**
– Selecting [TV] as the source **117**
– Screen configuration **118**
– Touch panel key operation **118**
– Storing and recalling broadcast stations **118**
– Storing the strongest broadcast stations sequentially **119**
– Selecting the country group **119**

13 Using the AV Source (AV, EXT, AUX)

Operating the AV Input source **120**
– Selecting [AV INPUT] as the source **120**

Operating the External Unit **120**
– Selecting [EXT 1] or [EXT 2] as the source **120**
– Screen configuration **120**
– Touch panel key operation **120**
– Operate the external unit by using 1 key — 6 key **121**
– Operate the external unit by using Function 1 — Function 4 **121**
– Switching the automatic and manual function **121**

Operating the AUX input source (AUX) **122**
– Selecting [AUX] as the source **122**

14 Customising the Audio Setting related with Audio Visual

AV Setting Overview **123**
– How to Operate the Audio Settings screen **123**

Customising the Audio Settings Items **123**
– Using the equaliser **123**
– Setting the simulated sound stage **125**
– Using balance adjustment **125**
– Using subwoofer output **126**
– Using non fading output **126**
– Adjusting loudness **127**
– Using the high pass filter **127**
– Adjusting source levels **127**

Customising the System Settings Items **127**
– How to view and operate the System Settings **127**
– Setting up the built-in DVD drive **128**
– Setting the parental lock **129**
– Changing the wide screen mode **130**
– Setting for rear view camera **130**
– Setting the video input **131**
– Switching the auxiliary setting **131**
– Switching the muting/attenuation timing **131**
– Switching the muting/attenuation level **132**

– Changing the voice output of the navigation guidance **132**
– Switching the auto aerial setting **132**
– Setting the clock display on the video image **133**
– Setting the CD recording mode **133**
– Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller **133**
– Switching Auto PI seek **134**
– Setting the FM tuning step **134**
– Selecting the TV signal **134**

Other Functions **134**
– Selecting the video for "Rear display" **134**
– Operating the picture adjustment **135**
– Switching the backlight on or off **136**

Language Code Chart for DVD **137**

15 Operating Your Navigation System with Voice

To Ensure Safe Driving **138**
Basics of Voice Operation **138**
– Flow of voice operation **138**
– To start voice operation **138**

Tips for Voice Operation **139**
An Example of Voice Operation **140**
– Search for POI in vicinity **140**
– Search for the playlist **141**

Available Voice Commands **142**
– Voice commands related to navigation **143**
– Voice commands related to AV operation **145**
– Location screen (A) and (B) **146**

Other Voice Commands **148**
– Other voice commands for navigation operation **148**
– Other voice commands for AV operation **150**
– Category list for vicinity search **151**

Appendix

Troubleshooting **152**
Messages and How to React to Them **157**
Messages for Audio Functions **161**
Returning the Navigation System to the Default or Factory Settings **164**
– Setting items to be deleted **165**
– If system errors frequently occur **167**
– Completely returning the navigation system to the initial state **167**

Adjusting the Response Positions of the Touch Panels (Touch Panel Calibration) **167**
Positioning Technology **168**
– Positioning by GPS **168**
– Positioning by dead reckoning **169**
– How do GPS and dead reckoning work together? **169**

Handling Large Errors **170**
– When the positioning by GPS is impossible **170**

Vehicles that Cannot Obtain Speed Pulse Data **171**
Conditions Likely to Cause Noticeable Positioning Errors **171**
When the Hard Disk Drive is Disconnected **174**
Route Setting Information **174**
– Route search specifications **174**

Detail Information for Playable Media **176**
– DVD discs and other DVD media types **176**
– About playing DualDisc **176**
– About AVCHD recorded discs **176**
– CD-R/CD-RW discs **176**
– MP3 files **177**

Display Information **179**
– Navigation menu **180**
– Shortcut menu **180**

Menu in the Audio Screen **181**
Glossary **182**

Index **186**

Manual Overview

This manual provides important information you need to make full use of your new navigation system. The beginning sections outline the navigation system and describe its basic operation. The later sections describe the details of the navigation functions.
Chapter 10 to Chapter 14 describe how to operate the AV functions. Please read these chapters when you use a disc in the built-in DVD drive or operate the Pioneer audio equipment connected to the navigation system.

How to use this manual

Be sure to read the following descriptions

- **Licence Agreement (➲ Refer to *Licence Agreement* on page 10)**
  This provides a licence agreement of this software. Be sure to read this before using the software.
- **About the Data for the Map Database (➲ Refer to *About the Data for the Map Database* on page 15)**
  This provides the date when the Map Database was recorded.
- **Copyright (➲ Refer to *Copyright* on page 15)**
  This provides the copyright of the Map Database.
- **About Gracenote® (➲ Refer to *About Gracenote®* on page 15)**
  This provides a licence agreement and copyright of the Gracenote® music recognition service. Be sure to read this before using this navigation system.

Finding the operation procedure from what you want to do

When you have decided what you want to do, you can find the page you need from the "**Contents**".

Finding the operation procedure from a menu name

If you want to check the meaning of each item displayed on the screen, you will find the necessary page from the "*Display Information*" at the end of the manual.

Glossary

See the glossary to find the meaning of a term.

Index

The section at the end of this manual provides an index. See each term to find the main pages where it is stated.

Overview for each chapter

② **Before Using the System**
For safety reasons, it is particularly important that you fully understand your navigation system before using it. Be sure to read this chapter.

③ **Basic Operation**
Please read this section if you want to operate the navigation system immediately. It will explain the basics of this system.
This section describes the basic operations for navigation.

④ **How to Read the Map Display**
This section describes how to read the map screen, and the method of changing map view or map scale.

⑤ **Modifying Map Configurations**
The behaviour of your navigation system depends on the map display and guidance settings. If you need to change any of the current settings, read the relevant section of this chapter.

⑥ **Setting a Route to Your Destination**
This section describes various ways to search for a destination, edit the current route conditions and operate the route during route guidance.

⑦ **Registering and Editing Locations**
You can register and edit the points on the map. This chapter describes how to register a home location, favourite location or other location, and how to edit the entry in "Address Book".

⑧ **Using Hands-free Phoning**
When you are using a mobile phone featuring Bluetooth® technology by connecting the Bluetooth (sold separately) unit to the navigation system, you can operate your mobile phone hands-free. This chapter describes the operations related to hands-free phoning.

⑨ **Modifying the General Settings for Navigation Functions**
The behaviour of your navigation system depends a number of general settings for navigation functions. If you need to change any of the initial settings (default settings), read the relevant section of this chapter.

⑩ **Using the AV Source (Built-in DVD Drive and Radio)**
This section describes how to use DVD-Videos, CDs, MP3, discs and the radio.

⑪ **Using the AV Source (Music Library)**
You can record a music CD to the hard disk drive in the navigation system. This chapter describes recording music and playing back the recorded music.

⑫ **Using the AV Source (M-CD, iPod®, TV)**
This chapter describes the audio source operations that can be used when Pioneer audio equipment featuring IP-BUS (Multi-CD player, Interface adapter for iPod, TV tuner) is connected.

⑬ **Using the AV Source (AV, EXT, AUX)**
This chapter describes the audio source operations that can be used when connecting AV equipment with an RCA connector (AV input), future Pioneer devices (external unit), or auxiliary equipment (AUX).

⑭ **Customising the Audio Setting related with Audio Visual**
Using the audio source, various audio-visual settings are available to suit your tastes. This chapter describes how to change the settings.

⑮ **Operating Your Navigation System with Voice**
This section describes navigation operations, such as searching the destination and performing audio operations by voice.

⑯ **Appendix**
Please read the appendix to learn more about your navigation system and information such as the availability of after-care. Please see "*Display Information*" at the end of this manual to check the details for each item on the menu.

Terminology

Before moving on, take a few minutes to read the following information about the conventions used in this manual. They will help you greatly as you learn how to use your new equipment.

- Hardware buttons on your navigation system are described in **ALL CAPITAL**, **BOLD** lettering:
  e.g.)
  MENU button, **MAP** button.
- Items in the different menus or touch panel keys available on the screen are described in brackets [ ] and **bold**:
  e.g.)
  [**Destination**], [**Settings**].
- Extra information, alternative usages and other notes are presented like this:

e.g.)
❒ Touch panel keys which are not available at this time are greyed out.

- References to sections that describe information related to the current topics are indicated like this:
  e.g.)
  ➲ For details, refer to *Modifying the Route Calculation Conditions* on page 28

About the definition of terminology

"Front Display" and "Rear Display"

In this manual, the screen that is attached to the body of this navigation unit will be referred to as the "Front Display". Any additional optional screen that is purchased for use in conjunction with this navigation unit will be referred to as the "Rear Display".

"Video image"

"Video image" in this manual indicates the moving image from DVD-Video in the built-in DVD drive or from the equipment that is connected to this system with an AV-BUS or RCA cable, such as a TV tuner or general-purpose AV equipment.

Colour difference of the map display between day and night

Night display

The examples in this manual are illustrated using the daytime display. When driving at night, the colours you see may differ from those shown.■

Licence Agreement

PIONEER AVIC-HD3II

THIS IS A LEGAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN YOU, AS THE END USER, AND PIONEER CORP. (JAPAN) ("PIONEER"). PLEASE READ THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON THE PIONEER PRODUCTS. BY USING THE SOFTWARE INSTALLED ON THE PIONEER PRODUCTS, YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT. THE SOFTWARE INCLUDES A DATABASE LISENSED BY THIRD PARTY SUPPLIER(S) ("SUPPLIERS"), AND YOUR USE OF THE DATABASE IS COVERED BY THE SUPPLIERS' SEPARATE TERMS, WHICH ARE ATTACHED TO THIS AGREEMENT (Refer to the next page). IF YOU DO NOT AGREE WITH ALL OF THESE TERMS, PLEASE RETURN THE PIONEER PRODUCTS (INCLUDING THE SOFTWARE, AND ANY WRITTEN MATERIALS) WITHIN FIVE (5) DAYS OF RECEIPT OF THE PRODUCTS, TO THE AUTHORISED PIONEER DEALER FROM WHICH YOU PURCHASED THEM.

1 GRANT OF LICENCE

Pioneer grants to you a non-transferable, nonexclusive licence to use the software installed on the Pioneer products (the "Software") and the related documentation solely for your own personal use or for internal use by your business, only on such Pioneer products.

You shall not copy, reverse engineer, translate, port, modify or make derivative works of the Software. You shall not loan, rent, disclose, publish, sell, assign, lease, sublicence, market or otherwise transfer the Software or use it in any manner not expressly authorised by this agreement. You shall not derive or attempt to derive the source code or structure of all or any portion of the Software by reverse engineering, disassembly, decompilation, or any other means. You shall not use the Software to operate a service bureau or for any other use involving the processing of data for other persons or entities.

Pioneer and its licensor(s) shall retain all copyright, trade secret, patent and other proprietary ownership rights in the Software. The Software is copyrighted and may not be copied, even if modified or merged with other products. You shall not alter or remove any copyright notice or proprietary legend contained in or on the Software.

You may transfer all of your licence rights in the Software, the related documentation and a copy of this Licence Agreement to another party, provided that the party reads and agrees to accept the terms and conditions of this Licence Agreement.

2 DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY

The Software and related documentation are provided to you "AS IS". PIONEER AND ITS LICENSOR(S) (for the purpose of provisions 2 and 3, Pioneer and its licensor(s) shall be collectively referred to as "Pioneer") MAKES AND YOU RECEIVE NO WARRANTY, WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AND ALL WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE EXPRESSLY EXCLUDED. SOME COUNTRIES DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSION OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES, SO THE ABOVE EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. The Software is complex and may contain some non-conformities, defects or errors. Pioneer does not warrant that the Software will meet your needs or expectations, that operation of the Software will be error free or uninterrupted, or that all non-conformities can or will be corrected. Furthermore, Pioneer does not make any representations or warranties regarding the use or results of the use of the Software in terms of its accuracy, reliability or otherwise.

3 LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

IN NO EVENT SHALL PIONEER BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES, CLAIM OR LOSS INCURRED BY YOU (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMPENSATORY, INCIDENTAL, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES, LOST PROFITS, LOST SALES OR BUSINESS, EXPENDITURES, INVESTMENTS, OR COMMITMENTS IN CONNECTION WITH ANY BUSINESS, LOSS OF ANY GOODWILL, OR DAMAGES) RESULTING FROM THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SOFTWARE, EVEN IF PIONEER HAS BEEN INFORMED OF, KNEW OF, OR SHOULD HAVE KNOWN OF THE LIKELIHOOD OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS LIMITATION APPLIES TO ALL CAUSES OF ACTION IN THE AGGREGATE, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION BREACH OF CONTRACT, BREACH OF WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY, MISREPRESENTATION, AND OTHER TORTS. IF PIONEER'S WARRANTY DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT SHALL OR FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER BE HELD UNENFORCEABLE OR INAPPLICABLE, YOU AGREE THAT PIONEER'S LIABILITY SHALL NOT EXCEED FIFTY PERCENT (50%) OF THE PRICE PAID BY YOU FOR THE ENCLOSED PIONEER PRODUCT.

Some countries do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so the above limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty disclaimer and limitation of liability shall not be applicable to the extent that any provision of this warranty is prohibited by any country or local law which cannot be preempted.

4 EXPORT LAW ASSURANCES

You agree and certify that neither the Software nor any other technical data received from Pioneer, nor the direct product thereof, will be exported outside the country or district (the "Country") governed by the government having jurisdiction over you (the "Government") except as authorised and as permitted by the laws and regulations of the Government. If the Software has been rightfully obtained by you outside of the Country, you agree that you will not re-export the Software nor any other technical data received from Pioneer, nor the direct product thereof, except as permitted by the laws and regulations of the Government and the laws and regulations of the jurisdiction in which you obtained the Software.

5 TERMINATION

This Agreement is effective until terminated. You may terminate it at any time by destroying the Software. The Agreement also will terminate if you do not comply with any terms or conditions of this Agreement. Upon such termination, you agree to destroy the Software.

6 MISCELLANEOUS

This is the entire Agreement between Pioneer and you regarding its subject matter. No change in this Agreement shall be effective unless agreed to in writing by Pioneer. If any provision of this Agreement is declared invalid or unenforceable, the remaining provisions of this Agreement shall remain in full force and effect.

Tele Atlas End User Licensing Terms

THIS IS A LEGAL AGREEMENT (THE "AGREEMENT") BETWEEN YOU, THE END USER, AND PIONEER and its licensors of Data product (sometimes collectively "Licensors"). BY USING YOUR COPY OF THE LICENCED DATA, YOU AGREE TO THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT.

1 ***Grant of Licence.***

Licensors grant you a non-transferable, non-exclusive license to use the map data and business points of interest information (the "POIs"), (together, the "Data") contained on these discs, solely for personal, non-commercial use and not to operate a service bureau or for any other use involving the processing of data of other persons or entities. You may make one (1) copy of the Data for archival or backup purposes only but you may not otherwise copy, reproduce, modify, make derivative works, derive the structure of or reverse engineer the Data. The Data is restricted for use with the PIONEER Product(s).The Data contains confidential and proprietary information and materials, and may contain trade secrets, so you agree to hold the Data in confidence and in trust and not to disclose the Data or any portions in any form, including by renting, leasing, publishing, leasing, sublicensing or transferring the Data to any third party. You are explicitly prohibited from downloading the digital maps and programmes contained in the Data or from transferring these to another data carrier or computer. You are prohibited from using the POIs (i) to create mailing lists or (ii) for other such similar uses.

2 ***Ownership.***

The Data is copyrighted by the Licensors and the Licensors retain all ownership rights in the Data. You agree not to alter, remove, obliterate, or obscure any copyright notice or proprietary legend contained in or on the Data. The current copyrights are as follows:

Data Source © 2007 Tele Atlas
© BEV, GZ 1368/2003
© DAV
© IGN France Michelin data © Michelin 2007
© Ordnance Survey of Northern Ireland
© Norwegian Mapping Authority, Public Roads Administration /
© Mapsolutions
© Swisstopo
Topografische ondergrond Copyright © dienst voor het kadaster en de openbare registers, Apeldoorn 2007
"This data has been approved by Turkish Military Forces by the given authority from Councils of Ministers of Turkey".
© Roskartographia

This product includes mapping data licenced from Ordnance Survey with the permission of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office. © Crown copyright and/or database right 2007. All rights reserved. Licence number 100026920.

3 ***Warranty Disclaimer.***

THE DATA IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" AND PIONEER, ITS LICENSORS, AND ITS LICENCED DISTRIBUTORS AND SUPPLIERS (COLLECTIVELY, "SUPPLIERS") EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, EFFECTIVENESS, COMPLETENESS, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. PIONEER, ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS DO NOT WARRANT THAT THE DATA WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR THAT THE OPERATION OF THE DATA WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE GIVEN BY PIONEER, ITS LICENSORS, SUPPLIERS OR ANY OF THEIR RESPECTIVE EMPLOYEES CREATES A WARRANTY OR IN ANY WAY INCREASES PIONEER', ITS LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS LIABILITY AND YOU MAY NOT RELY ON ANY SUCH INFORMATION OR ADVICE. THIS DISCLAIMER IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT AND YOU ACCEPT THE DATA ON THIS BASIS.

4 ***Limitation of Liability.***

IN NO EVENT SHALL PIONEER, ITS LICENSORS' OR SUPPLIER' AGGREGATE LIABILITY FOR ALL MATTERS ARISING OUT OF THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THIS AGREEMENT, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY YOU FOR YOUR COPY OF THE PIONEER DATA. PIONEER, ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS SHALL NOT BE LIABLE IN ANY MATTER TO YOU FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, AND THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE DATA, EVEN IF PIONEER, ITS LICENSORS OR SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

5 ***Termination.***

This Agreement will terminate immediately and automatically, without notice, if you breach any term of this Agreement. You agree that in the event of termination of the Agreement, you shall return the Data (including all documentation and all copies) to PIONEER and its suppliers.

6 ***Indemnity.***

You agree to indemnify, defend and hold PIONEER, its Licensors, and its suppliers (including their respective licensors, suppliers, assignees, subsidiaries, affiliated companies, and the respective officers, directors, employees, shareholders, agents and representatives) free and harmless from and against any liability, loss, injury (including injuries resulting in death), demand, action, cost, expense, or claim of any kind or character, including but not limited to attorney's fees, arising out of or in connection with any use or possession by you of the Data.

7 ***Additional Provisions with respect to the Great Britain Data and Northern Ireland data only.***

a You are prohibited from removing or obscuring of any copyright, trademark or restrictive legend belonging to Ordnance Survey.

b The Data may include the data of licensors, including Ordnance Survey. Such Data is provided on an "AS IS" AND "WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS" and the licensors EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NONINFRINGE-MENT, MERCHANTABILITY, QUALITY, EFFECTIVENESS, COMPLETENESS, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA PRODUCT RESTS WITH YOU. ORDNANCE SURVEY DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE DATA WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, OR COMPLETE OR ACCURATE OR UP TO DATE OR ACCURATE OR THAT THE OPERATION OF THE DATA WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE GIVEN BY ORDNANCE SURVEY, PIONEER OR ITS LICENSORS AND EMPLOYEES CREATES A WARRANTY OR IN ANY WAY INCREASES ORDNANCE SURVEY'S LIABILITY AND YOU MAY NOT RELY ON ANY SUCH INFORMATION OR ADVICE. This is an essential condition of the Agreement and You accept the Data on that basis.

c IN NO EVENT SHALL ORDNANCE SURVEY BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR MATTERS ARISING OUT OF THE SUBJECT MATTER OF THE AGREEMENTS, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE. THE LICENSORS SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF BUSINESS PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION, LOSS OF BUSINESS INFORMATION, AND THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE AGREEMENT OR THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE DATA, EVEN IF THEY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

d You are prohibited from using the Data in any printed, published form that results in derivative products to be distributed freely or sold to the public without the prior permission of Ordnance Survey.

e You shall indemnify and hold harmless Ordnance Survey from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the claim, demand or action alleging loss, costs, damages, expenses, or injury (including injury from death) resulting from your authorised or unauthorised use, possession, modification, or alteration of the Data.

f End User accepts the obligation to, on request, provide Ordnance Survey with information on what products and/or services containing and/or derived from the Licenced Products they produce.

g You are liable to Ordnance Survey in the event of discovery of breach of the aforementioned contractual terms.

8 ***Additional Provisions with respect to the Denmark Data only.***

You shall be prohibited from using the Data to create maps within telephone books, telephone books or other products similar to telephone books (e.g. directories), including such products in digital form.

9 ***Additional Provisions with respect to the Norway Data only.***

You shall be prohibited from using the Data to create general purpose printed or digital maps, which are similar to the basic national products of the Norwegian Mapping Authority. (Any derivative product of the Data of Norway shall be regarded as similar to the basic national products of the Norwegian Mapping Authority if such derivative product has a regional or national coverage, and at the same time has a content, scale and format that are similar to the basic national products of the Norwegian Mapping Authority.)

10 ***Additional Provisions with respect to the Poland Data only.***

You shall be prohibited from using the Data to create printed maps.

11 ***Miscellaneous.***

This is the exclusive and complete Agreement between the Licensors and you regarding its subject matter. Nothing in this Agreement shall create a joint venture, partnership or principal-agent relationship between the Licensors and you. The internal laws of Sections 2 - 4 and 6 - 11 shall survive the expiration or termination of this Agreement. This Agreement may be amended, altered, or modified only by PIONEER. You may not assign any part of this Agreement without PIONEER' prior written consent. You acknowledge and understand that the Data may be subject to restrictions on exportation and agree to comply with any applicable export laws. In the event that any provision or part of a provision of this Agreement is determined to be invalid, illegal, or unenforceable, such provision or part thereof shall be stricken from this Agreement and the remainder of this Agreement shall be valid, legal, and enforceable to the maximum extent possible. Any notice under this Agreement shall be delivered by courier to PIONEER, Attention Legal Department.

About the Data for the Map Database

- This database was developed and recorded up to May 2007. Changes to streets/highways made after that time may not be reflected in this database.
- It is strictly prohibited to reproduce and use any part or the whole of this map in any form without permission from the copyright owner.
- If the local traffic regulations or conditions deviate from this data, follow the local traffic regulations (such as signs, indications, etc.) and conditions (such as construction, weather, etc.).
- The traffic regulation data used in the map database applies only to standard sized passenger vehicles. Note that regulations for larger vehicles, motorbikes, and other non-standard vehicles are not included in the database.

Copyright

Data Source © 2007 Tele Atlas
© BEV, GZ 1368/2003
© DAV
© IGN France Michelin data © Michelin 2007
© Ordnance Survey of Northern Ireland
© Norwegian Mapping Authority, Public Roads Administration /
© Mapsolutions
© Swisstopo
Topografische ondergrond Copyright © dienst voor het kadaster en de openbare registers, Apeldoorn 2007
“This data has been approved by Turkish Military Forces by the given authority from Councils of Ministers of Turkey”.
© Roskartographia
This product includes mapping data licenced from Ordnance Survey with the permission of the Controller of Her Majesty’s Stationery Office. © Crown copyright and/or database right 2007. All rights reserved. Licence number 100026920.
© 2008 INCREMENT P CORP. ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

About Gracenote®

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents: #5,987,525; #6,061,680; #6,154,773, #6,161,132, #6,230,192, #6,230,207, #6,240,459, #6,330,593, and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under licence from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent: #6,304,523. Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the “Powered by Gracenote” logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User Licence Agreement

Version 20061005

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.
You agree that your non-exclusive licence to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licence terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.
The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.
The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licenced to you “AS IS.” Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.
GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.
© Gracenote 2006

Other Precautions

- Part of the data cannot be acquired. The contents of the data in the Gracenote® Database included in the hard disk drive are not 100 % guaranteed.
- The Gracenote® Database included in the hard disk drive contains the titles for the 300 000 most frequently accessed albums worldwide as of August 2007. ■

Important Safety Information

Before using your navigation system, be sure to read and fully understand the following safety information:

WARNING

- Do not attempt to install or service your navigation system by yourself. Installation or servicing of the navigation system by persons without training and experience in electronic equipment and automotive accessories may be dangerous and could expose you to the risk of electric shock or other hazards.
- When a route is calculated, the route and voice guidance for the route is automatically set. Also, for day or time traffic regulations, only information about traffic regulations at the time when the route was calculated is shown. One-way streets and street closures may not be taken into consideration. For example, if a street is open during the morning only, but you arrive later, it would be against the traffic regulations so you cannot drive along the set route. When driving, please follow the actual traffic signs. Also, the system may not know some traffic regulations.

- ❒ Read the entire manual before operating this navigation system.
- ❒ The navigation features of your navigation system (and rear view camera option if purchased) are intended solely as an aid to you in the operation of your vehicle. It is not a substitute for your attentiveness, judgement, and care when driving.
- ❒ Do not operate this navigation system (or the rear view camera option if purchased) if doing so will divert your attention in any way from the safe operation of your vehicle. Always observe safe driving rules and follow all existing traffic regulations. If you experience difficulty in operating the system or reading the display, park your vehicle in a safe location and apply the handbrake before making the necessary adjustments.
- ❒ Never allow others to use the system unless they have read and understood the operating instructions.
- ❒ Never use this navigation system to route to hospitals, police stations or similar facilities in an emergency. Stop using any functions relating to the hands-free phone and please call the appropriate emergency number.
- ❒ Route and guidance information displayed by this equipment is for reference purposes only. It may not accurately reflect the latest permissible routes, road conditions, one way streets, road closures, or traffic restrictions.
- ❒ Traffic restrictions and advisories currently in force should always take precedence over guidance given by the navigation system. Always obey current traffic restrictions, even if the navigation system provides contrary advice.
- ❒ Failure to set correct information about the local time may result in the navigation system providing improper routing and guidance instructions.
- ❒ Never set the volume of your navigation system so high that you cannot hear outside traffic and emergency vehicles.
- ❒ To promote safety, certain functions are disabled unless the vehicle is stopped and/or the handbrake is applied.
- ❒ The data encoded in the hard disk drive for the navigation system is the intellectual property of the provider, and the provider is responsible for such content.
- ❒ Keep this manual handy as a reference for operating procedures and safety information.
- ❒ Pay close attention to all warnings in this manual and follow the instructions carefully.

- ❒ Do not install this navigation system where it may (i) obstruct the driver's vision, (ii) impair the performance of any of the vehicle's operating systems or safety features, including air bags or hazard lamp buttons or (iii) impair the driver's ability to safely operate the vehicle.
- ❒ Please remember to wear your seat belt at all times while operating your vehicle. If you are ever in an accident, your injuries can be considerably more severe if your seat belt is not properly buckled.
- ❒ Never use headphones while driving.■

Additional Safety Information

To ensure safe driving

Handbrake interlock

Certain functions (such as viewing of DVD video and certain touch panel key operations) offered by this navigation system could be dangerous and/or unlawful if used while driving. To prevent such functions from being used while the vehicle is in motion, there is an interlock system that senses when the handbrake is set and when the vehicle is moving. If you attempt to use the functions described above while driving, they will become disabled until you stop the vehicle in a safe place, and apply the handbrake. Please keep the brake pedal pushed down before releasing the handbrake.

WARNING

- To avoid the risk of damage and injury and the potential violation of applicable laws, the navigation system is not for use with a "Video image" that is visible to the driver.
- In some countries the viewing of "Video image" on a display inside a vehicle even by persons other than the driver may be illegal. Where such regulations apply, they must be obeyed.
- When applying the handbrake in order to view "Video image" or to enable other functions offered by the navigation system, park your vehicle in a safe place, and keep the brake pedal pushed down before releasing the handbrake if the vehicle is parked on a hill or otherwise might move when releasing the handbrake.

CAUTION

- It is strongly suggested that the speed pulse wire be connected for accuracy of navigation and better performance of interlock.
- If the speed pulse wire is unavailable for some reason, it is recommended that the pulse generator ND-PG1 (sold separately) be used.

When you attempt to watch "Video image" while driving, the warning "**Viewing of front seat video source while driving is strictly prohibited.**" will appear on the screen. To watch "Video image" on this display, stop the vehicle in a safe place and apply the handbrake. Please keep the brake pedal pushed down before releasing the handbrake.

Rear view camera and [Rear View] mode

With an optional rear view camera, you are able to use the navigation system as an aid to keep an eye on trailers or to back into a tight parking spot.

WARNING

- SCREEN IMAGE MAY APPEAR REVERSED.
- USE INPUT ONLY FOR REVERSE OR MIRROR IMAGE REAR VIEW CAMERA. OTHER USE MAY RESULT IN INJURY OR DAMAGE.■

Features (Characteristics of this software)

Touch panel key operation

It is possible to operate the navigation functions and the Audio functions by using touch panel keys.

Variety of view modes

Various types of screen display can be selected for navigation guidance.

Wide variety of facility information for Points of Interest (POI) Search

You can search for your destination from all areas.

- Approximately 31 000 POIs are included in the database.
- Some POI information may not be accurate or may become inaccurate through the passage of time. Please contact the POI directly to verify the accuracy of the information about the POI that appears in this database. POI information is subject to change without notice.

Auto reroute function

If you deviate from the set route, the system will re-calculate the route from that point so that you remain on track to the destination.

❒ This function may not work in certain areas.

Auto CD title and MP3 file listing

Title lists are automatically displayed when a CD or MP3 disc is played. This system provides easy-to-operate audio functions that allow playback simply by selecting an item from the list.

Compatible voice recognition system

Connecting the supplied microphone will enable voice operation for both the navigation and AV functions.

Original image assignment

You can store your own pictures on a CD-R in JPEG format and import original images in this navigation system. These imported images can be set as a background or splash screen, or as a picture in an address book or phone book entry.

Station name auto display

While tuning to an RDS station, you can display a list of the stations you are receiving with the programme service names. This facilitates station selection.

If the system cannot receive the programme service name, the frequency will be displayed instead.

❒ The functions related to RDS (Radio Data System) are available only in areas with FM stations broadcasting RDS signals. Even if the navigation system is receiving an RDS station, not all the functions related to RDS are available.

CAUTION

Rear View is to use the navigation system as an aid to keep an eye on the trailers, or while backing up. Do not use this function for entertainment purposes. ■

Notes for Hard Disk Drive

Recording equipment and copyright

Recording equipment should be used only for lawful copying and you are advised to check carefully what defines lawful copying in the country in which you are making a copy. Copying of copyright material such as films or music is unlawful unless permitted by a legal exception or consented to by the right owners.

Notes when writing data to the hard disk drive at low temperature

Writing to the hard disk drive, such as recording music to the music library, may be disabled when the navigation system detects abnormally low temperatures inside the vehicle. Functionality will become available once the temperature inside the vehicle returns to normal. Additionally, if the low temperature continues for a long time, the system may be booted up with the preliminary mode because the system can not recognise the hard disk drive.

➲ For details, refer to *When the Hard Disk Drive is Disconnected* on page 174

Points about recording

- ❒ Pioneer does not compensate for the contents that could not be recorded or any loss of recorded data due to a malfunction or failure of the navigation system.
- ❒ The data recorded on the navigation system is not allowed to be used without permission from its right holder under copyright law, except for personal entertainment.
- ❒ Make sure to check the recording operation before recording and check the recorded contents after recording.
- ❒ Recording is not guaranteed for all CDs.

Data saved or recorded by the customer

- ❒ The data saved or recorded onto this navigation system by the customer cannot be extracted from the navigation system, and those services cannot be accepted.
- ❒ The data saved or recorded onto this navigation system by the customer cannot be guaranteed during repair or service. Lost data that was saved or recorded by the customer is not guaranteed.
- ❒ Due to copyrights, the music data recorded into the Music Library cannot be backed up during repair or service. ■

In case of trouble

Should the navigation system fail to operate properly, contact your dealer or nearest authorised Pioneer Service Station. ■

Visit Our Web site

Visit us at the following site:
http://www.pioneer.eu

- Register your product. We will keep the details of your purchase on file to provide you with a reference in the event of an insurance claim such as loss or theft. ■

Flow from Startup to Termination

At first, please confirm the positions of the following features using the “Hardware Manual”.

- **MAP** button
- **MENU** button
- **AV** button
- **OPEN CLOSE** button

1 Start the engine to boot up the system.
After a short pause, the navigation splash screen comes on for a few seconds.

• • • •

Navigation menu overview

[Destination] menu

You can search your destination in this menu. Also you can check your route, and the set route can be cancelled from this menu.
➲ For more details about “Specifying the address and searching for the destination”, refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on the next page
➲ For more details about “Other search methods”, refer to Chapter 6

[Info/Phone] menu

If you are using a mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology by connecting the Bluetooth unit (ND-BT1) (sold separately) to the navigation system, you can configure Bluetooth settings or check the outgoing/incoming call history.

❒ [**Phone Menu**] is active only when the Bluetooth unit (ND-BT1) is connected to the navigation system.

[Map] menu

You can change [**View Mode**], or set the items to be displayed during the navigation function.

❒ [**View Mode**] can be selected only when the vehicle position is at the current position. If you want to select [**View Mode**] while scrolling the map, press **MAP** button to centre the current position back on the vehicle position.

[Settings] menu

Customise the navigation functions so they can be used easily.
➲ For details, refer to Chapter 9

Buttons you can use

The availability of a specific button or function is indicated by its appearance. Depending on the status of your vehicle, some buttons will be available, while others will not be.

Active touch panel key: The button is operable.

Inactive touch panel key: The function is not available (e.g., operation is prohibited while driving).

Basic Navigation

CAUTION

For safety reasons, you cannot use some of these basic navigation functions while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and apply the handbrake (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

Basic flow of operation

1 Park your vehicle in a safe place, and apply the handbrake.

2 Press MENU button to display the navigation menu.

3 Select the method of searching for your destination.

4 Enter the information about your destination to calculate route.

5 Confirm the location on the map.

6 Check and decide the route.

7 Your navigation system sets the route to your destination, and the map of your surroundings appears.

8 After releasing the handbrake, drive in accordance with the navigation information, subject to the important safety instructions noted on *Important Safety Information* on page 17 and *Additional Safety Information* on page 18.

Calculating your destination by using Address Search

The most frequently used function is [**Address Search**], in which the address is specified and the destination is searched. This section describes how to use [**Address Search**] and the basics of using the navigation system.

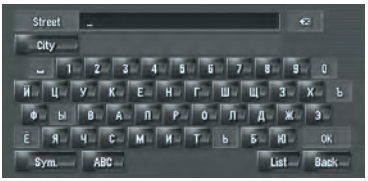
1 Press MENU button to display the navigation menu.

2 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu.

3 Touch [Address Search].

Select the method for searching the destination.

4 Input the street name.



When the options are narrowed down to six or less, a list of the matching streets automatically appears.

When you enter the same characters that were entered previously, the system automatically displays the characters that follow the entered characters. (Auto fill-in function)

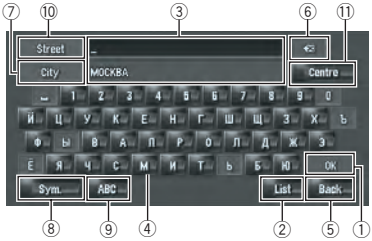
❒ When entering the characters, the system will automatically search the database for all possible options. If there is only one letter that could possibly follow your entry, that letter will automatically be entered.

❒ A list appears if multiple options exist. Select the desired one from the list and proceed to the next step. In rare cases, you may need to input the city name to determine the city.

■ **Refine location with metro station name**

1 Enter the metro station name in [**City**] text box.
2 Select the metro station name from the list.
3 Touch [**Centre**].
"Location confirmation screen" appears.
➲ For details, refer to ***Checking the location on the map*** on page 26

■ **Operation of street name or city name input screen (e.g. Cyrillic keyboard)**



① **[OK]:**
Confirms the characters displayed in ③, and proceeds to the next step.

② **[List]:**
Lists candidates based on yellow characters in ③. Touch the desired item in the list to proceed to the next step.

③ **Text box:**
Displays the characters that are entered.

④ **Keyboard:**
Use to enter the text.

⑤ **[Back]:**
Returns previous screen.

⑥ ⌫:
Deletes the input text one letter at a time from the end of the text. Continuing to touch the button deletes all of the text.

⑦ **[City]:**
Touch if you want to specify the destination city or area first. (This is available only when street name is blank.)

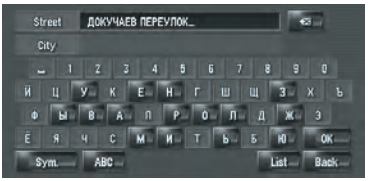
⑧ **[Sym.], [0-9]:**
Input text with marks such as [&] or [**+**] or numbers.
❒ Touch to toggle the selection.

⑨ **[ABC], [АБВГ]:**
Toggle the keyboard between Latin letters (A – Z, a - z) and Cyrillic letters.
❒ Touch to toggle the selection.

⑩ **[Street]:**
Touch if you want to return the street input mode. (This is available only when ④ is blank.)

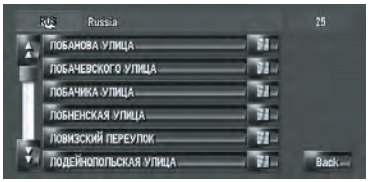
⑪ **[Centre]:**
This can be selected when you enter a city or area name first. Touch this button to display the central point of the entered city or area. Touching [**OK**] searches the route to the central point.
Proceed to Step 8.
❒ You can set the layout of the keyboard.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the keyboard layout* on page 73

■ **Auto fill-in function**



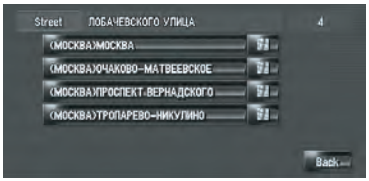
The previously entered characters are stored for each country and each search function. The next time a character is entered, suggested characters will be shown. For example, if [ДОКУЧАЕВ ПЕРЕУЛОК] has been entered in the past, when you input just the letter [Д], [ДОКУЧАЕВ ПЕРЕУЛОК] will be fill-in automatically. The manually input characters are displayed in yellow, and the suggested characters are displayed in white, so you can distinguish them. To determine the filled-in character, touch [**OK**].

5 Touch the street from the list.



If the selected street has only one matching location, “Route confirmation screen” appears. Proceed to Step 8.

6 Touch the city or area where your destination is located.



7 Input the house number and touch [OK].

Touch the characters you want to input.

When a route is not set, route calculation starts immediately.

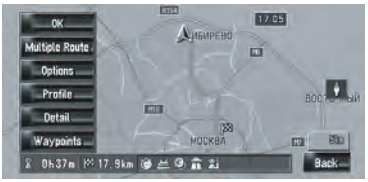
➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27

When a route is already set, “Location confirmation screen” is shown.

➲ For details, refer to ***Checking the location on the map*** on the next page

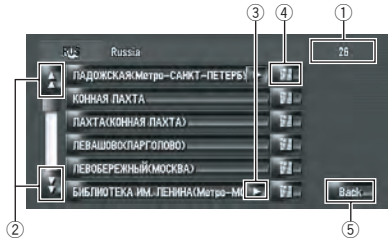
❒ If you touch [**OK**] with no input, the central point of the house number range is displayed and “Location confirmation screen” appears.

Route calculation starts.



When the route calculation is completed, “Route confirmation screen” appears.

■ **Operation of street list screen**



① **Number of possible choices**

② ▲▼:
Touching ▲ or ▼ on the scroll bar scrolls through the list and allows you to view the remaining items.

③ ▶:
If all of characters cannot be displayed within the displayed area, touching ▶ to the right of the item allows you to see remaining characters.

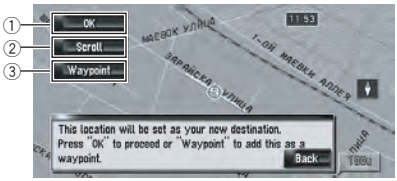
④ :

Touching displays a map of the place you have selected. (Possibilities for place names may appear with the list screen.) You can also set a destination by touching to the right of the list. Touch [**OK**] to set the location indicated by the scroll cursor as your destination.

⑤ **[Back]:**
Returns previous screen.

- **Checking the location on the map**

Location confirmation screen



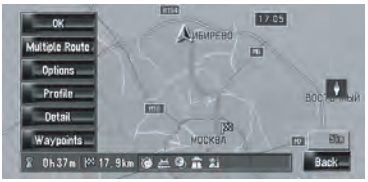
① **Calculating the route to the destination**
Route calculation starts. When the route calculation is completed, "Route confirmation screen" appears.

❒ If you press **MAP** button or **MENU** button during route calculation, the calculation is cancelled and the map screen appears.

② **Scrolling the map**
The map display changes to the scroll mode. You can fine-tune the location in the scroll mode, and then you can set the location as your destination or do various operations by using the shortcut menu.
➲ For details, refer to *Shortcut menu* on page 39

③ **Setting the location as a waypoint**
The location indicated by the scroll cursor will be set as a waypoint.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing Waypoints* on page 31

8 Touch [OK] to decide your route.



Checking and modifying the route

You can check the route details. You can also recalculate the route in different conditions.

Route confirmation screen

① **Route calculation condition**
Shows the route has been calculated under those conditions.
- shows that fastest route is prioritised.
- shows that shortest route is prioritised.
- shows that using highways and main roads are prioritised.
- shows whether the suggested route includes motorways.
- shows whether the suggested route includes toll roads. The current setting appears.
- shows whether the suggested route includes ferries. The current setting appears.
- shows whether the suggested route includes learning routes. The current setting appears.

In addition, if the calculated route has unintended results, the following icons will be shown.
- shows that motorways could not be avoided.
- shows that toll roads could not be avoided when the setting [**Avoid Toll Road**] is [**On**].
- shows that ferries could not be avoided when the setting [**Avoid Ferry**] is [**On**].
- shows for routes that contain streets or bridges that are subject to traffic regulations during a certain time when the setting [**Time restrictions**] is [**On**].

② **Distance to the destination**

③ **Travel time to destination**

④ **Set the displayed route**
Sets the displayed route as your route, and starts the route guidance.
➲ For details, refer to *When the route guidance starts* on the next page

⑤ **Display multiple routes**
You can select a desired route from multiple route options. Calculated routes are shown in different colours.

Touching 1 to 6 switch to another route.
Touching [**OK**] returns to the previous display.
If you set waypoints, you cannot use the multiple route option.
- ❒ There can be cases that the same route is displayed even when multiple routes are searched.
- ❒ In multiple route calculations, both routes that use and avoid the motorways are calculated independently of the setting for [**Avoid Motorway**].

⑥ **Change the route calculation condition**
Modify each calculation condition, and recalculate the route.
➲ For details, refer to *Modifying the Route Calculation Conditions* on the next page

⑦ **View the route profile**
You can check the streets that you will travel to reach the destination.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking the route by text* on page 30

⑧ **Check the shape of route**
You can check the overall shape of your route and the location of destination on the map.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking the entire route overview on the map* on page 30

⑨ **Adding and edit waypoint**
You can add, remove, or sort waypoints.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing Waypoints* on page 31

When the route guidance starts

Touching [**OK**] in "Route confirmation screen" starts the route guidance on the displayed route. Your navigation system gives you the following information with the timing adjusted to the speed of your vehicle:

- Distance to the next turning point
- Direction of travel
- Road number of the motorway
- Arrival of waypoint (If waypoints are set)
- Arrival of your destination

❒ Touching or allows you to turn the voice guidance on or off.

❒ Touching 520.m allows you to hear the information again.

❒ If you stop at a petrol station or a restaurant during the route guidance, your navigation system remembers your destination and route Information. When you start the engine and get back on the road, the route guidance resumes.

❒ If you deviate from the route with guidance set to [**Street List Mode**] or [**Mixed Mode**] and enter a street not recorded on the hard disk drive, the screen changes to [**Map Mode**]. When you return to the route, the screen returns to the original view and resumes route guidance.

Basic items on the screen

This section describes only the basic items that are displayed on the Map Mode screen.

➲ For more details about "Details of the map screen", refer to *How to Use the Map* on page 33

① **Current location**
② **Distance to the destination**
③ **Estimated time of arrival (default)**
④ **ON/OFF key for voice guidance**

Cancelling the Route Guidance

If you no longer need to travel to your destination or if you want to change your destination, follow the steps below to cancel the route guidance.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Cancel Route].

A message confirming whether to cancel the current route appears.

2 Touch [Yes].

The current route is deleted, and a map of your surroundings reappears.

On this screen, you can also select the following items:

[Skip]:

Skip the route to the selected waypoint, and recalculate the route. (The skipped waypoint will not be deleted.)

[No]:

Returns to the previous display without deleting the route.

Modifying the Route Calculation Conditions

You can modify the conditions for route calculation and recalculate the current route.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Route Overview].

❒ [**Route Overview**] is displayed only when the route is set.

2 Touch [Options].

3 Touch the desired items to change the route calculation conditions and then touch [OK].

The route is recalculated, and "Route confirmation screen" appears.
When a single route is calculated, the system searches for the route that meets these conditions as closely as possible.

- ❒ A single route is calculated in the following cases:
- — When a waypoint is set
- — When a route is set through voice recognition
- — When auto reroute is carried out

Items that users can operate

Settings marked with an asterisk (*) show that these are default or factory settings.

Route Condition
This setting controls how the route should be calculated by taking into account the time or the distance or the main road.
Determine which condition takes priority for route calculation.

[Fast]*:
Calculate a route with the shortest travel time to your destination as a priority.

[Short]:
Calculate a route with the shortest distance to your destination as a priority.

[Main Road]:
Calculate a route that passes major arterial road as a priority.

Avoid Toll Road
This setting controls whether toll roads (including toll areas) should be taken into account.

[Off]*:
Calculate a route that may include toll roads (including toll areas).

[On]:
Calculate a route that avoids toll roads (including toll areas).

- ❒ The system may calculate a route that includes toll road even if [**On**] is selected.

Avoid Ferry
This setting controls whether ferry crossings should be taken into account.

[Off]*:
Calculate a route that may include ferries.

[On]:
Calculate a route that avoids ferries.

- ❒ The system may calculate a route that includes ferry way even if [**On**] is selected.

Avoid Motorway
This setting controls whether motorways may be included in the route calculation.

[Off]*:
Calculate a route that may include motorways.

[On]:
Calculate a route that avoids motorways.

- ❒ The system may calculate a route that includes motorway even if [**On**] is selected.

Time restrictions
This setting controls whether streets or bridges have traffic restrictions during a certain time should be taken into account.

- ❒ If you want to set your route to avoid opened bridges, select [**On**].

[On]*:
Calculate a route while avoiding streets or bridges with traffic restrictions during a certain time.

[Off]:

Calculate a route while ignoring traffic restrictions.

❒ The system may calculate a route that includes streets or bridges that are subject to traffic restrictions during a certain time even if [**On**] is selected.

CAUTION

If the time difference is not set correctly, the navigation system cannot consider traffic regulations correctly. Set the time difference correctly (➲ Refer to *Setting the time difference* on page 73).

Learning Route

The system learns the travel history of your vehicle for each road.

This setting controls whether or not the travel history should be taken into account.

[On]*:

Calculate the route with the travel history taken into account.

[Off]:

Calculate the route without the travel history taken into account.

[Clear]:

Clear the current travel history. ▣

Checking the Current Route

You can check information about the route between your current location and your destination.

You can select two methods:

- Checking the passing streets with a list
- Checking the route by scrolling the map along the route.

Checking the route by text

You can check the route details.

❒ This function is not available if your vehicle has deviated from the route.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Route Overview].

"Route confirmation screen" appears.

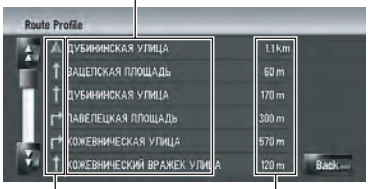
❒ [**Route Overview**] is displayed only when the route is set.

2 Touch [Profile].

3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll the list.

Scroll the list as necessary.

Names of the streets you are driving through



Turning direction — Driving distance

4 Touch [Back].

You can return to the previous display.

❒ When a long distance route is calculated, your navigation system may not be able to list all roads. (In this case, the remaining roads will be shown in the list as you drive on.)

Checking the entire route overview on the map

You can check the entire shape of the current route.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Route Overview].

"Route confirmation screen" appears.

❒ [**Route Overview**] is displayed only when the route is set.

2 Touch [Detail].

3 Touch the screen and place the scroll cursor on the point where you want to view the detail or the entire picture. Or zoom in or zoom out the map scale.

The map around the scroll cursor is zoomed in or out so you can view the detail or the entire picture.

4 Touch [Back].

The screen returns to the previous display.

- ❒ You can also check the overview by using the shortcut menu if [**Whole Route Overview**] is selected on [**Short-Cut Selection**]. ■

Editing Waypoints

You can select waypoints (locations you want to visit on the way to your destination) and you can recalculate the route to pass through these locations.

Adding a waypoint

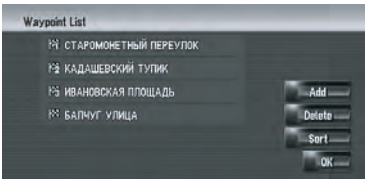
Up to 5 waypoints can be selected, and selected points can be sorted automatically or manually.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Route Overview].

2 Touch [Waypoints].

The waypoint menu screen appears.

3 Touch [Add].



The “Select Search Method” screen appears. After searching for a point, display it on a map, then touch [**OK**] to add to the waypoints. (You can add up to 5 waypoints in total.)

4 Touch [OK].

A route is recalculated, and “Route confirmation screen” appears.

➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27

- ❒ If you set waypoints in the route to your destination, the route up to the next waypoint will appear in light green. The rest of the route will appear in light blue.

Deleting a waypoint

You can delete waypoints from the route and then recalculate the route. (You can delete waypoints successively.)

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Route Overview].

2 Touch [Waypoints].
The waypoint menu screen appears.

3 Touch [Delete], then touch the waypoint you want to delete.
The touched waypoint will be deleted from the list.

4 Touch [OK].
The route is recalculated, and "Route confirmation screen" appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27

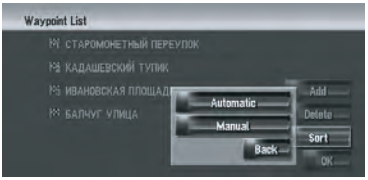
Sorting waypoints

You can sort waypoints and recalculate the route.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Route Overview].

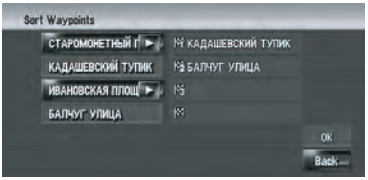
2 Touch [Waypoints].
The waypoint menu screen appears.

3 Touch [Sort], then touch [Automatic] or [Manual].



[Automatic]:
You can sort the destination and waypoints automatically. The system will show the nearest waypoint (distance in a straight line) from the current location as waypoint 1, and sort the other points (including your destination) in order of distance from the waypoint 1.

[Manual]:
You can manually sort destination and waypoints. Touch the destination and waypoints on the left side of the screen in the order you want to visit. The touched destination and waypoints are displayed on the right side of the screen. Touch [**OK**] to complete the sorting and the previous screen appears.



4 Touch [OK].
The route is calculated again, and "Route confirmation screen" appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27

Skipping a waypoint

If points are set, the next waypoint along the route can be skipped.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Cancel Route].

2 Touch [Skip].
A new route to your destination through all remaining waypoints, except for the skipped waypoint, is calculated.
"Route confirmation screen" appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27 ■

How to Use the Map

Most of the information provided by your navigation system can be seen on the map. You need to get to know how the information appears on the map.

Switching the view mode

There are six types of map display and two additional view modes.

- **Map Mode**
- **Mixed Mode** (during route guidance only)
- **Street List Mode** (during route guidance only)
- **Driver's View**
- **2D Twin Map View**
- **3D Twin Map View**
- **Vehicle Dynamics**
- **Rear View** (Only possible when [**Camera Input**] is set to [**On**].)

1 Press MAP button to display a map of the area around your current position.

2 Press MAP button again.

3 Touch the mode name to select the mode you want to display.

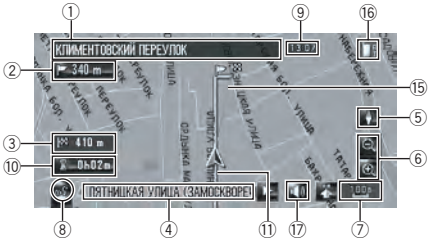
❒ You can display the view mode screen by touching [**Map**] in the navigation menu, and touching [**View Mode**].

How to view the map of the current location

❒ This example shows a case where [**Second Maneuver Arrow**] is set to [**View**].

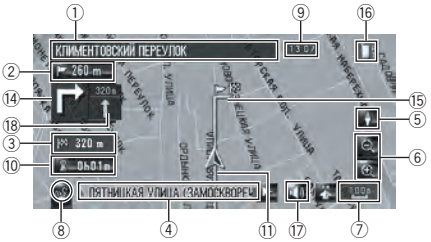
Map Mode

Displays the standard map.



Mixed Mode

Overlays two arrows onto the standards the map ([**Map Mode**]) is overlaid with 2 arrows.

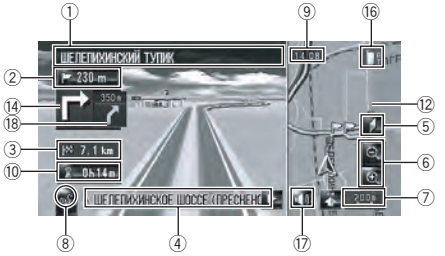


Street List Mode

Displays the name of the street you will travel along next and an arrow indicating the direction of travel.

Driver's View

Shows a map from the driver's viewpoint.



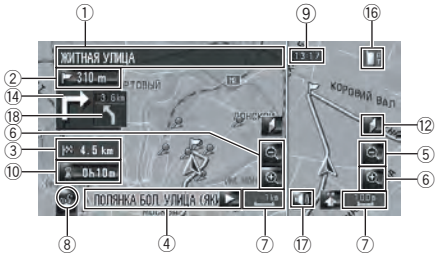
About the 3D POI

Depending on the data, the POI may appear in graphical 3D or plate format with POI mark in the left screen of [**Driver's View**].

❒ The displayed POI in the left screen has no relation with the setting of [**Overlay POI**].

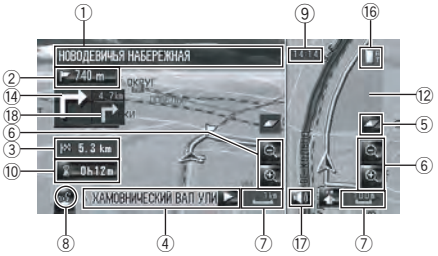
2D Twin Map View

You can split the screen in half. The right screen and the left screen can display a map in different scales. The **2D** map appears on the left screen.



3D Twin Map View

You can split the screen in half. The right screen and the left screen can display a map in different scales. The **3D** map appears on the left screen.



❒ You can select whether to display or hide the 3D Landmark on the map.

➲ For details, refer to **3D Landmark** on page 42

Vehicle Dynamics Display

Indicates the status of your vehicle.

CAUTION

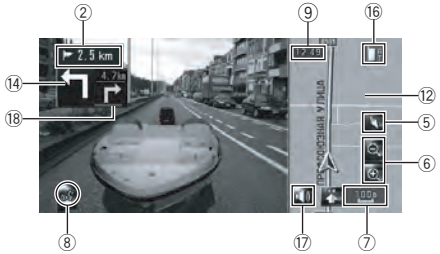
In **Vehicle Dynamics** Display mode, the speedometer display may show a different speed than your vehicle's actual speedometer, because your unit measures speed in a different way.

❒ You can change the items indicated on the left and right meters.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the* **Vehicle Dynamics** *Display* on page 39

Rear View

Rear view image is displayed on the left-hand side of the screen, while the map of your surroundings is indicated on the right.

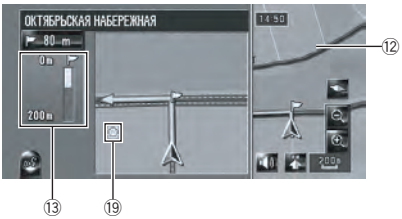


- ❒ If [**Camera Input**] is set to [**Off**], the rear view image is not displayed. Please set it to [**On**].
  ➲ For details, refer to *Setting for rear view camera* on page 130
- ❒ When using a camera set to turn On/Off in conjunction with the reverse signal, no camera images will be displayed in rear view mode while you are moving forward.
- ❒ If the camera is set always On, it can display images in rear view mode when the vehicle is moving forward. In that case, you should ask the camera maker or dealer whether the camera's functions or lifetime would be affected.
- ❒ **Rear View** can be displayed at all times (e.g. when monitoring an attached trailer) as a split screen where map information is partially displayed. Please beware that in this setting, camera image is not resized to fit to screen, and that a portion of camera image may not be viewable.

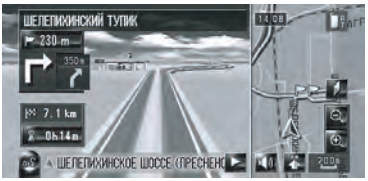
Enlarged map of the intersection

This screen is displayed only when [**Close Up View**] in [**Map**] menu is [**2D**] or [**3D**].

Enlarged map of the intersection (2D)



Enlarged map of the intersection (3D)



Display items

- ❒ Information with the mark (*) appears only when the route is set.
- ❒ Depending on the conditions and settings, some items may not be displayed.

Current location

The current location of your vehicle. The tip of the triangular mark indicates your heading and the display moves automatically as you drive.

- ❒ The head of the triangular mark is the current vehicle position.

Destination*

The checkered flag indicates your destination.

Guidance point*

The next guidance point (next turning point, etc.) is shown by a yellow flag.
Up to the next three guidance points are displayed.

Waypoint*

The checkered flag and number (1 to 5) indicates your waypoint.

① **Name of the street to be used (or next guidance point)***
② **Distance to the guidance point***

Touching allows you to hear the information again.

③ **Distance to the destination (or distance to waypoint)***
The distance on this button shows the distance to the destination or to each waypoint. If waypoints are set, the distance to the destination and the next waypoint change with each touch.
❒ When the vehicle position is on the route, the distance to the destination (or waypoint) appears. When the vehicle position is not on the route, the linear distance to the destination (or waypoint) appears.

④ **Street name (or city name) that your vehicle is travelling along**

⑤ **Compass**
The red arrow indicates north. If the scale is less than 50 km (25 miles), touching the map changes the direction that it is displayed in (north up/heading up). When the scale of the map is greater than 50 km (25 miles), it is fixed to "North up".
- Heading up:
  The map display always shows the vehicle's direction as proceeding toward the top of the screen.
- North up:
  The map display always has north at the top of the screen.

⑥ **Zoom in/Zoom out**
Touch to change the map's scale.
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the scale of the map* on the next page

⑦ **Map scale**
The scale of the map is indicated by distance.

⑧ **VOICE icon**
Touch to change to the voice recognition mode.
❒ This is displayed only when the microphone for voice recognition is connected.
➲ For details, refer to Chapter 15

⑨ **Current time**

⑩ **Estimated time of arrival (or travel time to your destination)***
The display alternates by pressing it.
❒ The estimated time of arrival is an ideal value calculated based on the value set for [**Average Speed**] and the actual driving speed. The estimated time of arrival is only a reference value, and does not guarantee arrival at that time.
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the virtual speed of the vehicle* on page 74

⑪ **Tracking dot**
The tracking dot shows the route your vehicle has travelled by white dots.
➲ For more details about "Select the tracking setting", refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

⑫ **Map of your surroundings (Side map)**
Touching the screen changes the map to the Scroll mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Scroll the map to the location you want to see* on page 38

⑬ **Distance to a turning point***
Displayed on the enlarged intersection map. The green bar gets shorter as your vehicle approaches a turning point.

⑭ **Next direction of travel***
When you approach an intersection, it appears green. The screen displays the distance to the next guidance point.

⑮ **Direction line***
The direction towards your destination (or scroll cursor) is indicated with a straight line.

⑯ **Bluetooth Connected icon**
This icon shows whether the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology is connected or not. You can select between display and non-display.
: Connected
: Disconnected
❒ This is available only when the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is connected.
➲ For more details about "Selecting display or non-display for the **Bluetooth Connected** icon", refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

⑰ **Mute Voice Guidance icon**

Touch to turn on or off the mute setting of Voice Guidance. You can select between display and non-display.
➲ For more details about "Selecting display or non-display for the Mute Voice Guidance icon", refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

⑱ **Second Maneuver Arrow***
Indicates the turning direction after next. You can select between display and non-display.
➲ For more details about "Selecting display or non-display for **Second Maneuver Arrow**", refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

⑲ **POI icon**
The POI icon may appear on the enlarged map of the intersection (when available data exists).

Roads without turn-by-turn instructions

Routable roads (the route displayed and highlighted in purple) have only basic data and can only be used to plot a navigable route. Pioneer Navigation will only display a navigable route on the map (only the arrival guidance for the destination or a waypoint is available). Please review and obey all local traffic rules along the highlighted route. (For your safety.)
No turn-by-turn directions will be displayed on these roads.
When your vehicle reaches to the entrance of this road, the icon will be displayed beside the direction arrow, indicating that the guidance is not available with this type of road.
The icon will be indicated for roads that have available guidance.
The Close-up of intersection function, Auto Reroute function, Changing the view to [**Mixed Mode**], or [**Street List Mode**] are not available.

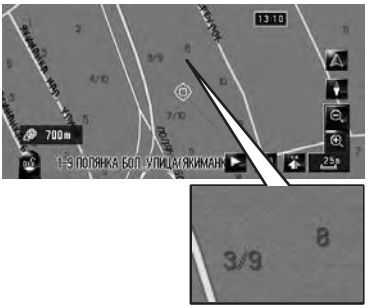
Changing the scale of the map

Touching or allows you to change the map scale. Touch and holding or allows you to change the scale in smaller step within a range of 25 metres to 500 kilometres (25 yards to 250 miles). When the view mode is set to **Map Mode** or **Mixed Mode**, [Direct scale key] is displayed. Touching [Direct scale key] changes the map to the selected scale directly.

Direct scale key

- The icon of the entry in "Address Book" is displayed when the map scale is 20 km (10 miles) or lower.
- POI icons are displayed when the map scale is 1 km (0.75 mile) or lower.

House numbers displayed on the map (MOSCOW only)

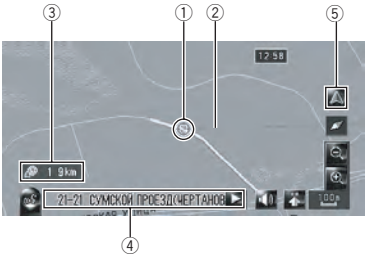


When using 25 m scale or 50 m scale maps of MOSCOW, the house numbers appears on the maps. This function is useful to find a particular address.

Scroll the map to the location you want to see

Touching anywhere on the map changes the map to “Scroll mode” and the map begins scrolling in the direction you touched. The scrolling stops when you release your finger from the screen. Pressing **MAP** button returns you to the map of your surroundings.

❒ Touch the area close to the centre of the screen to scroll slowly; touch near the sides of the screen to scroll quickly.



① **Scroll cursor**
The position of scroll cursor shows the location selected on the current map.
❒ When the scale is 200 m (0.25 mile) or lower, the road appears light blue in the vicinity of the scroll cursor.

② **Direction line**
This is the line connecting between the current location and the scroll cursor.
The direction towards the scroll cursor is indicated with a straight line.

③ **Distance from the current location**
This shows the distance in a straight line between the location indicated by the scroll cursor and your current location.

④ **Street name, city name, area name and other information for this location**
(The information displayed varies according to the scale.)
Touching on the right displays hidden text.

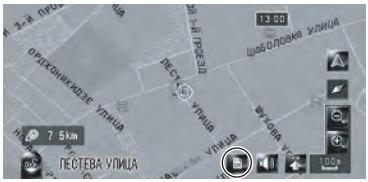
⑤ **Current location key**
Touching returns you to the map of your current location.

Viewing the information of a specified location

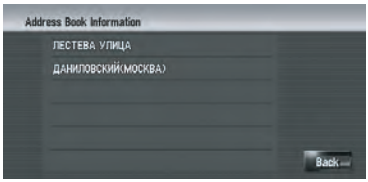
An icon appears at registered places (home location, specific places, **Address Book** entries) and places where there is a POI icon. Place the scroll cursor over the icon to view the detailed information.

1 Scroll the map and move the scroll cursor to the icon you want to view.

2 Touch .



Information for a specified location appears.



The information shown varies according to the location. (There may be no information for that location.)

➲ For more details about “Registering places”, refer to *Registering Locations Overview* on page 53

➲ For more details about “Displaying facilities (POI) icon on the map”, refer to *Displaying POI on the Map* on page 43

❒ appears when the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is connected to the navigation system together with the mobile phone. By touching , you can make a phone call to the displayed phone number.
➲ For details, refer to *Dialling from the map* on page 67

3 Touch [Back].

Returns to the previous display.

4 Touch .

Returns to the map of your surroundings.

❒ You can also return to the map of your surroundings by pressing **MAP** button.

Shortcut menu

Shortcuts allow you to perform various tasks, such as route calculation for the location indicated by the scroll cursor or registering a location in [**Address Book**], faster than using the navigation menu.

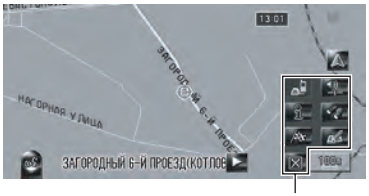
You can customise the shortcuts displayed on screen. The shortcuts described here are prepared as the default setting.

➲ For more details about "Changing a shortcut", refer to *Selecting the Shortcut* on page 42

❒ When the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is connected to the navigation system, you can use shortcuts related to phone functions.

❒ Items marked with an asterisk (*) cannot be removed from Shortcut menu.

- **When the map is displayed, touch .**



Shortcut menu

: **Route Options***

Displayed when the map is not scrolled. This item can be selected only during route guidance.

You can modify the conditions for route calculation and recalculate the current route.

➲ For details, refer to *Modifying the Route Calculation Conditions* on page 28

: **Destination***

Displayed when the map is scrolled. Set the route to the place specified with the scroll cursor.

: **Registration**

Register information on the location indicated by the scroll cursor to the Address Book.

➲ For details, refer to *Registering a Location into "***Address Book***"* on page 54

: **Vicinity Search**

Find POIs (Points Of Interest) in the vicinity of the scroll cursor.

➲ For details, refer to *Finding a POI in the Vicinity* on page 48

: **Overlay POI**

Displays icons for surrounding facilities (POI) on the map.

➲ For details, refer to *Displaying POI on the Map* on page 43

: **Volume**

Displays [**Volume**].

➲ For more details about "**Volume**", refer to *Setting the Volume for Guidance and Phone* on page 72

: **Phone Book**

Displays [**Phone Book**].

➲ For details, refer to *Calling a number in the phone book* on page 65

➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "Phone Book"* on page 68

: **Menu Close**

Hides the Shortcut menu.

Setting the Vehicle Dynamics Display

You can change the content of the left and right meters on the **Vehicle Dynamics** Display. Until the sensor's initial learning is complete, only the voltage and clock are available.

❒ The speed displayed is a guideline and may not correspond to the actual speed.

1 Switch to Vehicle Dynamics Display.

➲ For more details about "Changing the map display mode", refer to *Switching the view mode* on page 33

2 Touch the left or right meter.

Touch panel keys are displayed.

3 Touch the items you want to display.

You can select the following items:
[**Voltage**]:
Displays the power supply and voltage supplied from the battery to this system.
[**Acceleration**]:
Acceleration in a forward direction is displayed. The **+** sign indicates acceleration while the **-** sign indicates deceleration.
[**Lateral Acceleration**]:
Acceleration in a side direction such as when turning, is displayed. The **+** sign indicates a right turn, while the **-** sign indicates a left turn.
[**Angular Velocity**]:
Displays the vehicle's turning angle over one second (how far it has turned in a second).
[**Slope**]:
Displays the vehicle's vertical movement. **+** side represents the rising angle, and **-** side the falling angle.
[**Direction**]:
Displays the direction your vehicle is travelling in.
[**Clock**]:
Current time is displayed.
[**Adjust Style**]:
Touch [**Adjust Style**] to display a screen for selecting the panel pattern. Touch one of the patterns from among those displayed on screen to change the panel to the selected pattern.

- ❒ If you touch [**Peak Hold Reset**], the maximum and minimum (green line) values indicated in [**Acceleration**] and [**Lateral Acceleration**] are reset.
- ❒ You cannot change the speedometer at the centre.
- ❒ Selecting **Demo Mode** in the **Settings** menu enables you to perform a demonstration with random values.

CAUTION
For safety reasons, you cannot use some of these navigation functions while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and apply the handbrake (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

Entering the Map Menu

1 Press MENU button to display the navigation menu.

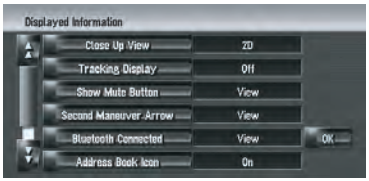
2 Touch [Map] to display the Map menu.

3 Change the setting.
➲ For more details about "Adjusting each item", refer to Chapter 5
❒ This section describes the details of the setting for each item. Settings marked with an asterisk (*) show that these are default or factory settings.■

Setting the Item on the Map Screen

You can select whether to display or hide the icon on the map or how to display the map.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu, then touch [Displayed Info].
The Displayed Info screen appears.



On this screen, you can operate the following items.

2 To finish the setting, touch [OK].

Close Up View
You can select the method to display the close up view of the intersection.

- [**2D**]*:
  Displays the close up view with the 2D map.
- [**3D**]:
  Displays the close up view with [**Driver's View**].
- [**Off**]:
  Does not display the close up view.

Tracking Display
You can trace locations that you have already passed with white dots on the route.

- [**On (Always)**]:
  Displays tracking for all journeys.
- [**On (This journey)**]:
  Displays tracking dots but erases them when the navigation system is turned off (when turning off the engine of your vehicle).
- [**Off**]*:
  Does not display tracking dots.

Show Mute Button
Selects whether to display or hide the voice guidance mute key on the map.

- [**View**]*:
  Displays the voice guidance mute key on the map.
- [**Hide**]:

Hides the voice guidance mute key on the map.

Second Maneuver Arrow

Selects whether to display or hide the second turn ahead of the vehicle on the map (except for [**Street List Mode**]).

➲ For details, refer to *How to view the map of the current location* on page 33

- [**View**]*:
  Displays the second turn ahead of the vehicle on the map.
- [**Hide**]:
  Hides the second turn ahead of the vehicle on the map.

Bluetooth Connected

Selects whether to display or hide the icon for current status of the phone connection via Bluetooth wireless technology.

- [**View**]*:
  Displays the Bluetooth Connected icon on the map.
- [**Hide**]:
  Hides the **Bluetooth Connected** icon on the map.
  ➲ For more details about "**Bluetooth Connected** icon", refer to *How to view the map of the current location* on page 33

Address Book Icon

You can select whether to display the Address Book Icon on the map.

- [**On**]*:
  Displays the Address Book Icon on the map.
- [**Off**]:
  Hides the Address Book Icon on the map.
  ❒ Even if [**Address Book Icon**] is set to [**Off**], the alarm sounds when you approach the registered location and the set image pops up. To turn off the sound output and image pop up, select [**No Sound**] and [**No Picture**] for the entry.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "**Address Book**"* on page 55

3D Landmark

You can select whether to display the 3D Landmark on the map.

❒ 3D Landmark only appears when the view mode is [**3D Twin Map View**] and the map scale is set to 200 m (0.25 mile) or lower.

- [**On**]*:
  Displays the 3D Landmark on the map.
- [**Off**]:
  Hides the 3D Landmark on the map.

Selecting the Shortcut

Select shortcuts to display on the map screen. In the list displayed on screen, the items with red tick marks are displayed on the map screen. Touch the shortcut you want to display and then touch [**OK**] when a red check appears. You can select up to five shortcuts.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu, then touch [Short-Cut Selection].

The Short-Cut Selection screen appears.

On this screen, you can operate the following items.

2 Touch the item that you want to set in the shortcut menu.

An item with a red tick mark is displayed in the shortcut menu.

: **Registration***

Register the information on the location indicated by the scroll cursor to the Address book.

➲ For details, refer to *Registering a Location into "**Address Book**"* on page 54

: **Vicinity Search***
Find POIs (Points Of Interest) in the vicinity of the scroll cursor.
➲ For details, refer to *Finding a POI in the Vicinity* on page 48
: **Overlay POI***
Displays icon for surrounding facilities (POI) on the map.
➲ For details, refer to *Displaying POI on the Map* on this page
: **Volume***
Displays [**Volume**].
➲ For more details about "**Volume**", refer to *Setting the Volume for Guidance and Phone* on page 72
: **Phone Book***
Displays [**Phone Book**].
➲ For details, refer to *Calling a number in the phone book* on page 65
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "Phone Book"* on page 68
: **Dial Favourite 1** to **Dial Favourite 5**
Make a call to the phone number registered in [**Dial Favourites**].
➲ For details, refer to *Registering a phone number in "Dial Favourites"* on page 68
: **Whole Route Overview**
Displays the entire route (currently set).
➲ For details, refer to *Checking the entire route overview on the map* on page 30
: **Day/Night Display**
Switches **Day/Night Display** setting.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the Map Colour Change between Day and Night* on the next page
: **Address Book Icon Display**
Switches **Address Book Icon** setting.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

3 To finish the setting, touch [OK].

Displaying POI on the Map

Displays icons for the surrounding facilities (POI) on the map.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu, then touch [Overlay POI].

2 Touch [Display] to turn it [On].

❒ If you do not want to display the POI icon on the map, touch [**Display**] to turn it [**Off**]. (Even if [**Display**] is turned [**Off**], the POI selection setting is retained.)

3 Touch the category you want to display.

4 Touch [Select Detail].

[**Select All**]:
Selects all detailed categories that are included in that category. (E.g. all categories of restaurants including Japanese and fast food.)
[**Deselect All**]:
Deselects the selected category.

5 Touch the desired detailed category.

❒ You can select up to 100 items from the detailed category.

Categories that are already set will have a red tick mark.

6 Touch [OK].
Returns previous screen.

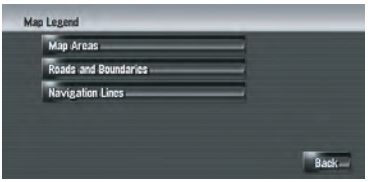
7 To finish the selection, touch [OK].
➲ For details, refer to *Viewing the information of a specified location* on page 38

Viewing the Map Colour Legend

You can browse the type of the roads and areas displayed on the map.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu, then touch [Map Legend].

2 Touch the type which you want to see.



3 Touch ▲ or ▼ to switch to the next page or previous page.

On this screen, you can operate the following items.

[**Day**]:

You can check the colour of the Day screen.

[**Night**]:

You can check the colour of the Night screen.

❒ To return the previous screen, touch [**Back**]. ■

Changing the View Mode for the Navigation Map

You can change the map display mode.

❒ You cannot perform this operation in "Scroll mode".

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu, then touch [View Mode].

2 Touch the type that you want to set.

➲ For details, refer to *How to Use the Map* on page 33 ■

Setting the Map Colour Change between Day and Night

To improve the visibility of the map during the evening, you can set the timing for changing the combination of the map colour.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu.

2 Touch [Day/Night Display] to change the setting.

Each time you touch the key changes that setting.

[**Automatic**]*:

You can change the colours of a map between daytime and nighttime according to whether the vehicle lights are On or Off.

[**Day**]:

The map is always displayed with daytime colours.

❒ To use this function with [**Automatic**], the Orange/white lead of the navigation system must be connected correctly.

❒ You can also change the brightness of the screen between daytime and nighttime with [**Dimmer**].

➲ For details, refer to *Operating the picture adjustment* on page 135 ■

Changing the Setting of Navigation Interruption Screen

Set whether to automatically switch to the navigation screen from the AV screen when your vehicle approaches a guidance point such as an intersection while displaying a screen other than navigation.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu.

2 Touch [AV Guide Mode] to change the setting.

Each time you touch the key changes that setting.

[**On**]*:

Switches from the audio operation screen to the navigation screen.

[**Off**]:

Does not switch the screen.

Changing the Map Colour

You can set the map colour to bluish or reddish.

1 Touch [Map] in the navigation menu.

2 Touch [Road Colour] to change the setting.

Each time you touch the key changes that setting.

[**Red**]*:

Changes to red based map colours.

[**Blue**]:

Changes to blue based map colours.

❒ Check the colour change with [**Map Legend**].

CAUTION

For safety reasons, these route-setting functions are not available while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and put on the handbrake before setting your route (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

❒ Some information on traffic regulations depends on the time when the route calculation is performed. Thus, the information may not correspond with a certain traffic regulation when your vehicle actually passes the location. Also, the information on the traffic regulations provided will be for a passenger vehicle, and not for a truck or other delivery vehicles. Always follow the actual traffic regulations when driving.

Searching for Points of Interest (POI)

Information about various facilities (Points Of Interest - POI), such as petrol stations, hotels, or restaurants, is available. By entering the POI Name, you can search for a POI.

❒ You can also narrow down the search range by initially specifying the name of the city where your destination is located and also by initially specifying the category.

❒ Use the functions [**POI Search**] and [**Vicinity Search**] in different situations. In [**POI Search**], the distance is not limited, but in [**Vicinity Search**], the distance for the search is limited to within a 16 km (10 miles) radius.

The following three methods are available for searching facilities by POI:

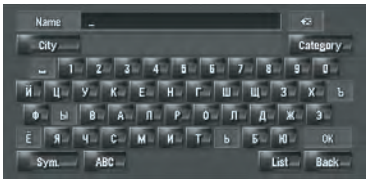
- *Searching for POIs by specifying a category first*
- *Searching for POIs by specifying a city name first*
- *Searching for a POI directly from the name of the facilities*

Searching for a POI directly from the name of the facilities

❒ Almost all of the data in the Map database is recorded in Cyrillic. When you search your destination, touch [АБВГ] and input in Cyrillic. If you don't find your desired item on that result, touch [**ABC**] to switch the keyboard and retry.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [POI Search].

2 Input the name of the facilities.



[**City**]:
Touch to specify the destination city or area, and then input the city name. (This is available only when [**Name**] is blank.)
[**Category**]:
Touch to specify the POI category. (This is available only when [**Name**] and [**City**] are blank.)
[**List**]:
Lists candidates based on the yellow characters in the text box (suggested characters in white are invalid). Touch the desired facility in the list to proceed to the next step.

❒ When the options are narrowed down to six or less, a list of the matching facilities automatically appears. When you enter the same characters that were entered previously, the system automatically displays the character string that follows the entered characters. (Auto fill-in function)
➲ For details, refer to ***Auto fill-in function*** on page 24

❒ If less than six POIs in a detailed category are available, the screen for inputting the POI name is skipped.
Please proceed to Step 3.

3 Touch Dist..

Touching Dist. sorts the items in the list in the order of distance.

A–Z:

Sorts the items in the list in the alphabetical order.

- You can use this sort function only when there are 2 000 or less candidates.

4 Touch the desired POI for your destination.

Icons are helpful for quickly telling the category of facilities with the same name.

When the route is not set, route calculation starts immediately.

➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27

When the route is already set, “Location confirmation screen” is shown.

- Touching displays a map of the surroundings of the selected POI.
- If the selected POI is the name of a chain of outlets and consequently the same store name applies to different locations (the number of outlets appears next to the chain’s name), touch the name of the POI to display a list of those POIs with city name and street name, touch to set the POI as your destination.

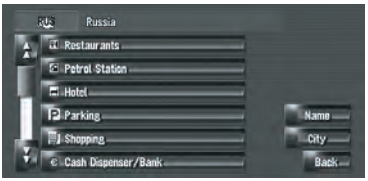
Searching for POIs by specifying a category first

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [POI Search].

2 Touch [Category].

3 Touch the desired category.

POI’s are divided into several categories.



If the category is not sub-divided into more detailed categories, the list will not be displayed. Proceed to Step 5.

[**Name**]:

Touch if you want to first specify the POI name.

➲ For details, refer to *Searching for Points of Interest (POI)* on the previous page

[**City**]:

Touch if you want to first specify the destination city or area.

➲ For details, refer to *Searching for POIs by specifying a city name first* on the next page

[**Back**]:

Return the **Destination** menu.

4 Touch the detailed category.

5 Input the name of the facilities.

➲ For more details about “Subsequent Operations”, refer to *Searching for POIs by specifying a category first* on this page

Searching for POIs by specifying a city name first

❒ Almost all of the data in the Map database is recorded in Cyrillic. When you search for your destination, touch [АБВГ] and input in Cyrillic. If you cannot find your desired item on that result, touch [**ABC**] to switch the keyboard and retry.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [POI Search].

2 Touch [City].

3 Input the name of the city that has the facility you want to search for.

You can perform a search by entering the metro station name in [**City**] text box.

➲ For details, refer to ***Refine location with metro station name*** on page 24

❒ Auto fill-in function is available.
➲ For details, refer to ***Auto fill-in function*** on page 24

A list of cities that include the entered characters appear.

[**List**]:
Lists candidates based on the yellow characters in the text box (suggested characters in white are invalid). Touch the desired city in the list to proceed to the next step.

4 Input the name of the facilities.

You can also narrow down the candidates by specifying the category before the name input.

➲ For more details about “Subsequent Operations”, refer to *Searching for POIs by specifying a category first* on the previous page

Finding a POI in the Vicinity

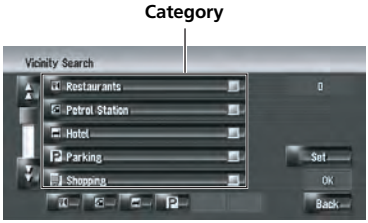
Searching for the facilities around the current position

You can search for Points Of Interest in your surroundings. Use this function to find a POI to visit during a journey. Searching range is approximately 16 km (10 miles) square from the current location.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Vicinity Search].

The list of POI categories appears.

2 Touch the desired category.



Previously set categories will have a red tick mark. When only a few types of the detailed categories are selected, blue tick marks will appear.

[**OK**]:
Start search with the selected category.

[**Back**]:
Returns to the previous screen.

[**Set**]:
Displays the screen for registering POI shortcuts.

➲ For details, refer to *Registering a POI shortcut* on page 51

❒ If you touch one of the POI shortcuts (e.g. P) before selecting a category on the list, you can start searching for facilities directly by the category registered on the POI shortcut.

❒ If you want to search for facilities by using both marked category and POI shortcuts, select some categories in the list and then touch the POI shortcut to start searching.

3 Touch [Select Detail].

[**Select All**]:
Selects all detailed categories that are included in that category. (E.g. all categories of restaurants including Japanese and fast food.)
[**Deselect All**]:
Deselects the selected categories.

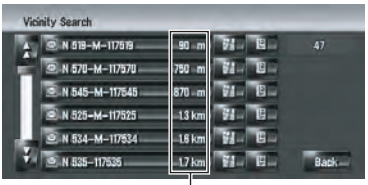
4 Touch the desired detailed category.

Previously set categories will have a red tick mark.

5 Touch [Back].
Returns to the previous screen.

6 Repeat Step 2 to 5 to select a category.
You can select up to 100 items from the detailed categories.

7 Touch [OK].
The POI in the selected category and subcategory are searched.
Names of POIs and their distance from your current location appear. They are listed in order from nearest to farthest. To the left of each item is an icon indicating the category.



Distance to the facility

8 Touch the desired POI to set your destination.
When the route is not set, route calculation starts immediately.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27
When the route is already set, “Location confirmation screen” is shown.
➲ For details, refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23

❒ When you touch , the POIs around the specified location are shown on a map.

Searching for the facilities around the scroll cursor

Searching range is approximately 16 km (10 miles) square from the scroll cursor.

❒ This can be used when **Vicinity Search** is selected in **Short-Cut Selection**.
➲ For more details about “Changing a shortcut”, refer to *Selecting the Shortcut* on page 42

1 Scroll the map and move the scroll cursor to the place where you want to search for POI.

2 Touch .
The shortcut menu appears.

3 Touch .
For more details about “following operations”, refer to Step 2 of *Searching for the facilities around the current position* on the previous page

➲ For details, refer to *Searching for the facilities around the current position* on page 48

- ❒ The distance indicated in the search result is the distance from the scroll cursor to the facility.
- ❒ The bottom icon is for shortcuts to your favourite categories. Touching the shortcuts icon displays a list of the facilities in a category.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Registering/deleting POI Shortcuts* on the next page
- ❒ [**Vicinity Search**] in the navigation menu searches your surroundings. On the other hand, in the case of in the Shortcut menu (➲ Refer to *Shortcut menu* on page 39), the area around the scroll cursor after the map is scrolled will be searched. ■

Finding Your Destination by Specifying the Postcode

If you know the postcode of your destination, you can use it to find your destination.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Postal Code Search].
The postcode input screen appears.

2 Input the postcode.

A list of cities with the specified postcode is shown.

3 Touch the city or area where your destination is located.

4 Input the street name.
If there is no house number, route calculation starts.

5 Input the house number.
When the route is not set, route calculation starts immediately.
➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27
When the route is already set, “Location confirmation screen” is shown.
➲ For details, refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23 ■

Route Calculation to Your Home Location or to Your Favourite Location

If your home location is registered, the route home can be calculated by touching a single key from the navigation menu. Also, you can register one location, such as your workplace, as your favourite location, and the route is calculated in a similar way.
➲ For details, refer to *Registering your home and your favourite location* on page 53

- **Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Return Home] or [Go to].**
  When the route is not set, route calculation starts immediately.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27
  When the route is already set, “Location confirmation screen” is shown.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23 ■

Selecting Destination from "Destination History" and "Address Book"

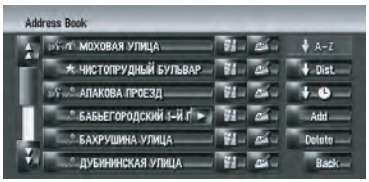
Any place that has been searched before is stored in **Destination History**. Places that you have registered manually, such as your home, are stored in **Address Book**. Simply select the place you want to go to from the list and a route to that place will be calculated.

➲ For more details about "Operation of the **Address Book**", refer to *Viewing "***Address Book***"* on page 55

➲ For more details about "Information on **Destination History**", refer to *Operating "***Destination History***"* on page 59

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Address Book] or [Destination History].

2 Touch your destination name.



When a route is not set, route calculation starts immediately.

➲ For details, refer to *Checking and modifying the route* on page 27

When a route is already set, "Location confirmation screen" is shown.

➲ For details, refer to ***Checking the location on the map*** on page 26

❒ You can also see the destination by touching on the right of the list. ■

Registering/deleting POI Shortcuts

You can register up to six shortcuts as your favourite POI. You can also change or delete the registered shortcuts.

❒ You can register a POI shortcut by touching on the Shortcut menu. The steps for registration and deletion are almost the same as described below.

Registering a POI shortcut

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Vicinity Search].

2 Touch [Set].

Displays a list of already registered POI shortcuts.

3 Touch [Add].

Displays a POI category list.

4 Touch a category.

5 Touch the POI selection method.

[**Select All**]:

Selects all detailed categories that are included in that category. (E.g. all categories of restaurants including Japanese and fast food.)
[**Select Detail**]:
Selects one of the detailed categories. Touching a category adds that category to the shortcuts.

Deleting a POI shortcut

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Vicinity Search].

2 Touch [Set].

3 Touch [Delete].
Displays a list of already registered POI shortcuts.

4 Touch the category to be deleted.
A red tick mark appears on the selected shortcut.
[**All**], [**None**]:
A red tick mark will appear or disappear on all registered categories.

5 Touch [Delete].
Deletes the selected shortcut from the list. ▣

CAUTION
For safety reasons, you cannot use some of these navigation functions while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and apply the handbrake (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

Registering Locations Overview

Registering places you visit frequently saves time and effort. Also, routes to registered locations can be calculated easily by touching the corresponding touch panel key. This registered location information can also be modified. The registered location appears on the map as an icon.

The registered locations are categorised into the following three types:

- : **Home location**:
  Register your home location here. Once your home location is registered, the route to your home can be set by simply touching [**Return Home**] in **Destination** menu. Only one location can be registered.
- : **Favourite location**:
  Register a point that you frequently visit (for example, your office) here. Once your favourite location is registered, a route to your favourite location can be set by simply touching [**Go to**] in **Destination** menu. Only one location can be registered.
- : (default): **Address Book entry**:
  Register other points you often visit here. Once locations are registered, you can set the route by selecting an item from **Address Book**.

❒ The items in **Address Book** are automatically updated in alphabetic order. However, "**Home location**" and "**Favourite location**" always appear at the top (if you registered them).

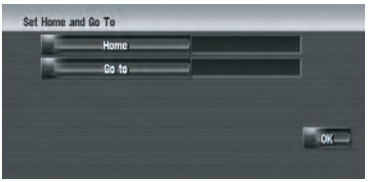
❒ Selects whether to display or hide all of the registered location icons on the map.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41 ■

Registering your home and your favourite location

You can register one home location and one favourite location. You can change the registered information later. You might find it useful to register your workplace or a relative's home as your favourite location.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Defined Locations].

2 Touch [Go to].
When registering your home location, touch [**Home**].



3 Search for a location to register.
You can select a method of location search.

➲ For more details about "Address Search", refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23
➲ For more details about "Information on searching locations to register", refer to Chapter 6

❒ If you select [**Map Search**], move the scroll cursor to the place you want to set and touch [**OK**].

4 Point the scroll cursor to the location you want to register and touch [OK].
The location is registered, and the Edit registered information screen appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "***Address Book***"* on page 55

5 Touch [OK].
Completes the registration. ■

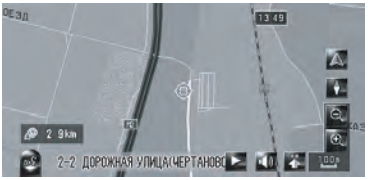
Registering a Location into "Address Book"

Address Book can store up to 400 registered locations. These can include your home location, favourite places, and destinations you have already registered.

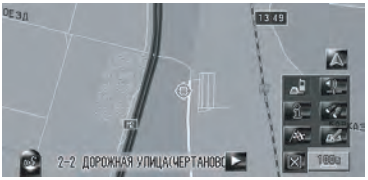
Registering a location by scroll mode

You can perform the following operation when [**Registration**] is selected in [**Short-Cut Selection**].

1 Scroll to the location you want to register.



2 Display the shortcut menu, and touch .



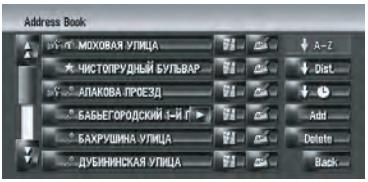
The location is registered, and the Edit registered information screen appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "***Address Book***"* on the next page

3 Touch [OK].
Completes the registration.

Registering a location by "Address Book"

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Address Book].

2 Touch [Add].



3 Select the search method, search the location, and display the map.

4 When the map of the location you want to register is displayed, touch [OK].

The location is registered, and the Edit registered information screen appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "***Address Book***"* on the next page

5 Touch [OK].
Completes the registration.

Viewing "Address Book"

● Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Address Book].

① **Home location**:
The item displayed with the icon is the home location. Touch to calculate the route.
➲ For details, refer to *Registering your home and your favourite location* on page 53

② **Favourite location**:
The item displayed with the icon is the favourite location. Touch to calculate the route.
➲ For details, refer to *Registering your home and your favourite location* on page 53

③ **Address Book entry**:
Touch to calculate the route.

④ :
A map of that location can be displayed.
➲ For details, refer to ***Checking the location on the map*** on page 26

⑤ :
The information related to that place can be edited.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in* "**Address Book**" on this page

⑥ Dist. :
Sorts the items in the list in order of the distance from the vehicle position.
❒ Active if there are items in the list and current sort is not by distance form current position.

⑦ A-Z :
It is the default sorting order.
❒ Active if there are items in the list and current sort is not alphabetically.

⑧ :
Sorts the items in the list in order of the recently used items.
❒ Active if there are items in the list and current sort is not by last used.

⑨ [**Add**]:
The screen for selecting the method for registering the location in **Address Book** appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Registering a Location into* "**Address Book**" on the previous page

⑩ [**Delete**]:
Deletes the registered locations.
➲ For details, refer to *Deleting the entry in* "**Address Book**" on page 59

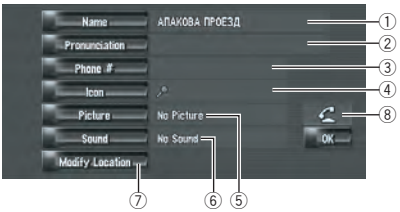
⑪ [**Back**]:
Returns previous screen.

Editing the entry in "Address Book"

In the Address Book menu, touching on the right-hand side of the location displays the Edit registered information screen.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Address Book].

2 Touch on the right-hand side of the location that you want to edit the information for.



① **Name**
You can enter the desired name.

② **Pronunciation**
You can enter the desired pronunciation independently from the name. The registered pronunciation is used for voice recognition.
❒ If nothing is entered in the text box, you cannot use that item as a voice command.

❒ Depending on which language is being switched to, you may not be able to use the registered pronunciation without modification.

➲ For details, refer to *Available Voice Commands* on page 142

③ **Phone #**
The phone number of the registered location. You can dial this number by using ⑧.

④ **Icon**
The symbol displayed on the map and Address Book.

❒ Selects whether to display or hide all of the registered location icons on the map.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

⑤ **Picture**
As you approach the location, the registered image appears.
You can register the picture stored in the navigation system. You can also import and register a picture shot from a digital camera by using a CD-ROM.

⑥ **Sound**
The selected sound is played when you approach the location.

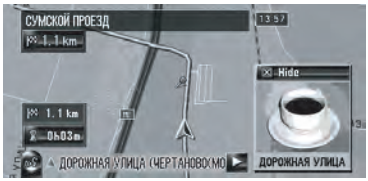
⑦ **Modify Location**
You can change the registered location by scrolling the map.

⑧
Only when the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is connected to the navigation system and a mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology is also connected, you can make a phone call to the registered phone number ③ by touching .

➲ For details, refer to *Dialling the entry in the Address Book* on page 66

When you approach a registered location while travelling

When a location with a registered sound effect and image comes within an approx. 300 m (0.19 mile) radius from the vehicle position, the sound effect plays and the image appears.



Changing a name

Entering letters in Cyrillic (With [Cyrillic] selected in [Keyboard] settings under [Regional Settings])

❒ When entering letters in Cyrillic, name change and voice command cannot be registered at the same time. To register voice command, touch [**Pronunciation**] after name change is complete and edit the settings.

1 Touch [Name].

When the message "**The character set is different from current keyboard setting. All characters will be deleted when editing. Would you like to proceed?**" appears, touch [**Yes**]. Touch [**No**] to cancel the operation.

2 Enter a new name, then touch [OK].

The current name appears in the text box. Delete the current name, and enter a new name between 1 and 23 characters long.

❒ Touch [**Small**] to enter lowercase letters. Touch [**Caps.**] to enter uppercase letters. Touch to toggle the selection.

Changing a name

Entering letters other than Cyrillic (With an item other than [Cyrillic] selected in [Keyboard] settings under [Regional Settings])

No sounds can be output during .

1 Touch [Name].
When the message "**The character set is different from current keyboard setting. All characters will be deleted when editing. Would you like to proceed?**" appears, touch [**Yes**]. Touch [**No**] to cancel the operation.

2 Touch [Yes].
When not registering a name as a voice command, select [**No**].

3 Enter a new name, then touch [OK].
The current name appears in the text box. Delete the current name, and enter a new name between 1 and 23 characters long.

- ❒ Touch [**Small**] to enter lowercase letters. Touch [**Caps.**] to enter uppercase letters. Touch to toggle the selection.
- ❒ When not registering the entered name as a voice command, Step 3 completes the operation.

4 If the pronunciation is suitable, touch [Yes].
The details you set are registered, and the Address Book menu appears.
Alternative options:
[**No**]:
Completes the registration without editing the pronunciation.
[**Repeat**]:
You can reconfirm the pronunciation of the name you entered.

- ❒ If the pronunciation is not the desired one, edit the characters so that the pronunciation matches your desired pronunciation.
- ❒ When you confirm the pronunciation, is shown on the left side of the location name displayed in "Address Book menu". This icon indicates that this name can be used as a voice command during voice operation.
- ❒ You cannot change the name of your home.

Changing a pronunciation

No sounds can be output during .

- ❒ Only Latin letters (A –Z, a - z) can be used for voice command. (Cyrillic letters can not be used for voice command.)

1 Touch [Pronunciation].

2 Enter a new pronunciation, then touch [OK].
The current pronunciation appears in the text box (if already set). Delete the current pronunciation, and enter a new pronunciation between 1 and 23 characters long.

3 If the pronunciation is suitable, touch [Yes].
The details you set are registered, and the Address Book menu appears.
Alternative options:
[**No**]:
Cancels the editing.
[**Repeat**]:
You can reconfirm the pronunciation of the name you entered.

- ❒ If the pronunciation is not the desired one, edit the characters so that the pronunciation matches your desired pronunciation.
- ❒ When you confirm the pronunciation, is shown on the left side of the location name displayed in the Address Book menu. This mark indicates that this name can be used as a voice command during voice operation.
- ❒ You cannot change the pronunciation of your home.
- ❒ If nothing is entered in the text box, you cannot use that item as the voice commands.

Entering or changing a phone number

1 Touch [Phone #].

2 Input a phone number, then touch [OK].

The Address Information menu appears.

- ❒ To change a registered phone number, delete the existing number and then enter a new one.

Selecting an icon to appear on the map

- ❒ Selects whether to display or hide all of the registered location icons on the map.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

1 Touch [Icon].

2 Touch the icon that you want to appear on the map.

The Address Information menu appears.

- ❒ You cannot change the icon of your home and your favourite location.
- ❒ If you set (dot), the registered name of that entry can be displayed on the map. The registered name does not appear if [**Address Book Icon**] is set to [**Off**].

Customising the picture

Be sure to read "*Limitations for importing pictures*" before creating a CD-R (-RW).

➲ For details, refer to *Limitations for importing pictures* on page 78

You can customise a picture for the Address Book entry. Some pictures are already stored in the hard disk drive, and you can also import JPEG format pictures, such as a picture from your digital camera, by using a CD-R (-RW). You can use pictures by burning them onto a CD-R (-RW) with your PC and inserting it into the navigation system.

Here, a method for changing the picture is described with an example of loading a picture stored on a CD-R (-RW) onto the navigation system.

- ❒ The name of an imported image file may not appear correctly depending on the type of letters used in the name.

1 Check that no disc is inserted, and insert your CD-R (-RW) to the disc loading slot.

2 Touch [Picture], and then touch [Import from Disc].

The list of the pictures stored in the CD-R (-RW) is displayed.

- ❒ Touching an option other than [**Import from Disc**] allows you to select an image stored on the hard disk drive.

3 Touch a picture you want to set.

- ❒ To cancel displaying the picture, select [**No Picture**].

4 Touch [Yes].

On this screen, you can select the following items:

[**No**]:

Select when you want to change to another picture.

Return to Step 3.

Selecting sound

No sounds can be output during .

1 Touch [Sound].

2 Select the desired sound.

- ❒ To turn off the sound, select [**No Sound**].

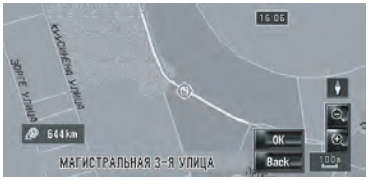
3 Touch [Sound] to hear the sound.

4 Touch [Set].

Changing the position of locations

1 Touch [Modify Location].
The map of the selected area and its surroundings appears.

2 Touch the screen to change its position, then touch [OK].



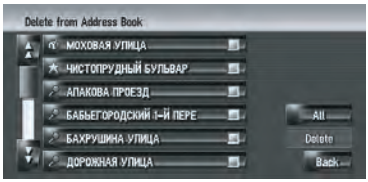
Deleting the entry in "Address Book"

Items registered in **Address Book** can be deleted. All entries of the data in **Address Book** can be deleted at once.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Address Book].

2 Touch [Delete].
"Delete from Address Book" screen appears.

3 Select the location you want to delete.
A tick mark appears by the selected location.



On this screen, you can select the following items:
[**All**]:
Selects all entries.
[**None**]:
Displayed when all locations are selected.
Cancels all selected locations.

4 Touch [Delete].

5 Select [Yes].
The data you selected is deleted.
Alternative option:
[**No**]:
Cancels the deletion and returns to Step 4.

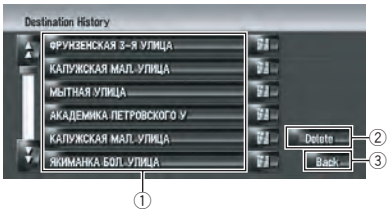
❒ Because deleted data cannot be restored, take extra care not to delete by mistake.

Operating "Destination History"

The points to which a route has been calculated in the past are automatically saved in **Destination History**.

❒ If no location is stored in Destination History, you cannot select [**Destination History**]. (If you perform a route calculation, you can select [**Destination History**].)

● **Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Destination History].**



① **Destination history**:
Touch to calculate the route.
② [**Delete**]:
Deletes the selected history.
③ [**Back**]:
Returns to the previous screen.

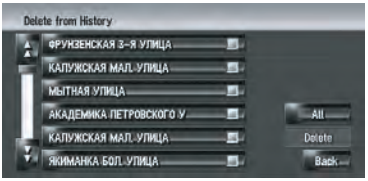
Deleting the entry in "Destination History"

Items in **Destination History** can be deleted. All entries in **Destination History** can be deleted at once.

1 Touch [Destination] in the navigation menu, then touch [Destination History].

2 Touch [Delete].
"Delete from History" screen appears.

3 Select the location you want to delete.
A tick mark appears by the selected location.



On this screen, you can select the following items:
[**All**]:
Selects all entries.
[**None**]:
Displayed when all locations are selected.
Cancels all selected locations.

4 Touch [Delete].

5 Select [Yes].
The data you selected is deleted.
Alternative option:
[**No**]:
Cancels the deletion and returns to Step 4.

❒ Because deleted data cannot be restored, take extra care not to delete by mistake.■

Hands-free Phoning Overview

CAUTION

For your safety, avoid talking on the phone as much as possible while driving.

If your mobile phone features Bluetooth® technology, this navigation system can be connected to your mobile phone wirelessly. Using this hands-free function, you can operate the navigation system to make or receive phone calls. You can also transfer the phone book data stored in your mobile phone to the navigation system. This section describes how to set up a Bluetooth connection and how to operate a mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology on the navigation system.
The following description assumes that the device name of the mobile phone to be connected using Bluetooth wireless technology is set to [**My mobile phone**].

Preparing communication devices

To use the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology on the navigation system, the Bluetooth unit (ND-BT1) (sold separately) is required.

Precautions for using a mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology

By connecting the Bluetooth unit (sold separately), you can use the functions described in this manual, including hands-free phoning or phone book transfer. To use these functions, the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology that you want to connect must have a supported profile that is the same as the profile for the Bluetooth unit. For the supported profile, refer to the owner's manual of the Bluetooth unit.

❒ Please read "*Notes for hands-free phoning*" for your reference.
➲ For details, refer to *Notes for hands-free phoning* on page 70
❒ When the power of the navigation system turns off, the Bluetooth connection is also disconnected. When the system restarts, the system automatically attempts to reconnect the Previously connected mobile phone. Even when the connection is cut for some reason, the system automatically reconnects the specified mobile phone (except when the connection is cut by the mobile phone operation).

You can open [**Phone Menu**] directly by pressing and holding **MENU** button.

❒ You can check the signal strength for connection between your mobile phone and Bluetooth unit (sold separately) with [**Connection Status**] in [**Hardware**] Menu.
➲ For more details about "[**Connection Status**]", refer to *Checking the connections of leads and installation positions* on page 74
❒ You can set the voice volume and ring volume with [**Volume**] in [**Settings**] Menu.
➲ For more details about "[**Volume**]", refer to *Setting the Volume for Guidance and Phone* on page 72
❒ You can set to mute peripheral sounds during hands-free phoning.
➲ For more details about "[**Mute Set**]", refer to *Switching the muting/attenuation timing* on page 131

While your mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology is connected, is displayed on the map.

❒ If you operate using "CD-SR1" Steering Remote Control (sold separately), the following buttons can be used for operation:

VR ACTIVATION / OFF HOOK button:

Same function as on the screen. (Except for [**Received Calls**].)
VR CANCEL / ON HOOK button:
Same function as or on the screen.
PHONE MENU button:
Open [**Phone Menu**] directly.

Setting up for hands-free phoning

Before you can use the hands-free phoning function, you will need to set up the navigation system for using that function. This entails registering your mobile phone with the navigation system and establishing a Bluetooth wireless connection between the navigation system and your mobile phone.

Registering your mobile phone

You need to register your mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology when you connect it for the first time. A total of five phones can be registered. Two registration methods are available:

- Registration from the navigation system
- Registration from the mobile phone

❒ Once you have registered a phone, you can select that mobile phone from the list to connect it without registration.

❒ If you try to register more than five mobile phones, the system will ask you to select one of the registered mobile phones to overwrite.
➲ For details, refer to *Connecting a registered mobile phone* on the next page

❒ The default device name displayed on the mobile phone is [**PIONEER HDD NAVI**]. The default password is [**1111**].

Operating from the navigation system

1 Activate the Bluetooth wireless technology on your mobile phone.
For some mobile phones, no specific action is necessary to activate Bluetooth wireless technology. For details, refer to the instruction manual of your mobile phone.

2 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

3 Touch [Phone Settings].
The phone settings screen appears.

4 Touch [Registration].

5 Touch [Navi].
The system searches for mobile phones with Bluetooth technology that are waiting for the connection and displays them in the list.

6 Wait until your mobile phone appears in the list.

❒ If you cannot find the mobile phone you want to connect, check that the mobile phone is waiting for the Bluetooth wireless technology connection.

7 Select the mobile phone you want to register from the list.

8 Enter the password of the navigation system to register it using your mobile phone.
After the registration is completed, the following screen appears.

❒ If registration fails, repeat the procedure from the beginning. If a connection still cannot be established, try connecting using your mobile phone.

Operating from your mobile phone

1 Activate the Bluetooth wireless technology on your mobile phone.

For some mobile phones, no specific action is necessary to activate Bluetooth wireless technology. For details, refer to the instruction manual of your mobile phone.

2 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

3 Touch [Phone Settings].

The phone settings screen appears.

4 Touch [Registration].

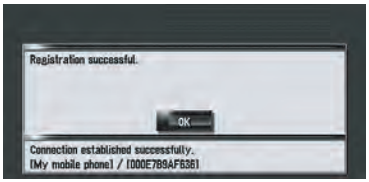
5 Touch [Mobile].

The navigation system waits for a Bluetooth wireless technology connection.

6 Operate your mobile phone to register the navigation system.

If your mobile phone asks you to enter a password, enter the password of the navigation system.

After the registration is completed, the following screen appears.



❒ If registration fails repeat the procedure from the beginning.

Connecting a registered mobile phone

The navigation system automatically connects the mobile phone selected as a target of connection. However, connect the mobile phone manually in the following cases:

- Two or more mobile phones are registered, and you want to manually select the mobile phone to be used.
- You want to reconnect a disconnected mobile phone.
- Connection cannot be established automatically for some reason.

❒ Unregistered mobile phones cannot be connected.

1 Activate the Bluetooth wireless technology on your mobile phone.

For some mobile phones, no specific action is necessary to activate Bluetooth wireless technology. For details, refer to the instruction manual of your mobile phone.

2 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

3 Touch [Phone Settings].

The phone settings screen appears.

Phone name currently connected or selected as a target of connection

4 Touch [Connection].

5 Touch the name of the mobile phone that you want to connect.

When a connection is successfully established, a connection complete message appears, and the system returns to the phone menu screen.

❒ To cancel the connection to your mobile phone, touch [**Cancel**].

❒ If connection fails, check whether your mobile phone is waiting for a connection. Then repeat the procedure from step 4.

Editing the device name

You can change the device name to be displayed on your mobile phone. (Default is [**PIONEER HDD NAVI**].)

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Phone Settings].
The phone settings screen appears.

3 Touch [Device Name].

4 Touch any key to enter the name you want to set and then touch [OK].
➲ For details, refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23

❒ Touch [**Small**] to enter lowercase letters. Touch [**Caps.**] to enter uppercase letters. Touch to toggle the selection.

❒ Up to 20 characters can be entered for a device name. You cannot enter Cyrillic letters.

Editing the password

You can change the password to be used for authentication on your mobile phone. (Default is [**1111**].)

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Phone Settings].
The phone settings screen appears.

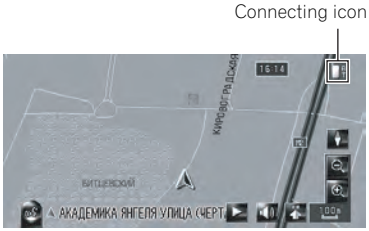
3 Touch [Password].

4 Touch any key to enter the password you want to set and then touch [OK].
➲ For details, refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23

❒ Four to eight characters can be entered for a password.

Receiving a phone call

You can use the navigation system to receive a call hands-free.
The map screen shows the icon while your mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology is connected. You can receive a hands-free call only when the mobile phone is connected.



Answering an incoming call

The system informs you that it is receiving a call by displaying a message and producing a ring sound once.

1 When there is an incoming call, touch .

When there is an incoming call, you can reject the call by touching .

❒ During a call, the is displayed at the right-hand side of the screen.

2 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.
The call ends.

❒ If the received voice is too quiet to hear, you can adjust the volume of the received voice.
➲ For more details about "**Volume**", refer to *Setting the Volume for Guidance and Phone* on page 72

- Depending on the caller ID service, the phone number of the received call may not be displayed. [**Unknown**] appears instead.
- You may hear a noise when you hang up the phone.

Making a phone call

You can make a phone call in many different ways.

Direct dialling

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Dial].

3 Input the phone number, and then touch to make a call.

To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

Dialling from the dialled number history or the received call history

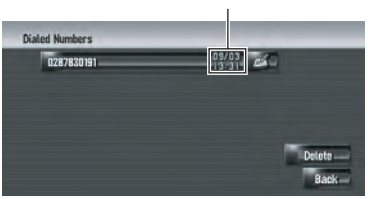
1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Dialed Numbers] or [Received Calls].

The list of either one appears.

3 Touch a name or telephone number from the list to make a call.

Date and time of the call dialled or received



To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

When you make a call to the phone number in [**Received Calls**] without "**+**", you can add "**+**" in front of that number by touching [**+**]. To delete "**+**", touch [**+**] again in that time.

Touch to make a call.

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

- Up to 30 entries for each of the dialled number and received call histories are recorded automatically. When the number of entries exceeds 30, the entries will be deleted from the oldest one.
- You can clear the dialled number or received call history.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Editing the received call or dialled number history* on page 70

Calling a number in the phone book

After finding the list in the Phone Book you want to call, you can select the number and make the call.

❒ Before using this function, you need to transfer the phone book stored in your mobile phone to the navigation system.

➲ For details, refer to *Transferring the phone book* on the next page

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Phone Book].
The phone book screen appears.

3 Touch a name from the list to make a call.
If you touch an alphabet tab, you can jump to the first page of the contacts whose names start with that letter.

Touch the entry in the list to make a call. To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

Calling a number in "Dial Favourites"

After finding the list in "**Dial Favourites**" you want to call, you can select the number and make the call.

❒ Before using this function, you need to set the phone number from the phone book to "**Dial Favourites**".

➲ For details, refer to *Registering a phone number in "Dial Favourites"* on page 68

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Dial Favourites].
The "**Dial Favourites**" screen appears.

3 Touch one of [Favourite 1] to [Favourite 5] to make a call.
Touch the entry to make a call.
To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

Dialling the entry in the Address Book

You can make a call to the entry registered in the address book.

❒ You cannot make a call to locations if the phone number is not registered.

1 Display "Address Book".

➲ For more details about "Operation of the **Address Book**", refer to *Viewing "***Address Book***"* on page 55

2 Touch of the entry you want to call.
The detail screen appears.

3 Touch to make a call.

To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

Dialling a facility's phone number

You can make a call to facilities with phone number data.

1 Perform [POI Search] or [Vicinity Search] and display the detail information.

➲ For more details about "Operation of [**POI Search**]", refer to *Searching for Points of Interest (POI)* on page 46

➲ For more details about “Operation of [**Vicinity Search**]”, refer to *Finding a POI in the Vicinity* on page 48

2 Touch of the entry you want to call.
The detail screen appears.

3 Touch to make a call.
To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

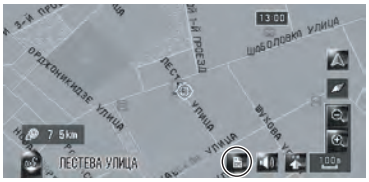
Dialling from the map

You can make a call by selecting the icon of a registered location icon from the map screen.

❒ You cannot make a call to locations that have no phone number data.

1 Scroll the map, and place the cursor on an icon on the map.

2 Touch .



The detail screen appears.

3 Touch to make a call.
To cancel the call after the system starts dialling, touch .

4 To end the call, touch at the top right of the screen.

Transferring the phone book

You can transfer the data from the phone book stored in your mobile phone to the phone book stored in the navigation system.

By transferring the phone book to the navigation system, you can browse the data in the transferred phone book on the screen of the navigation system. You can also select the entries in the phone book to make a call from the navigation system or edit the data on the navigation system.

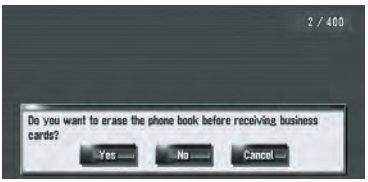
❒ Depending on the mobile phone, “Phone Book” may be called a name such as “Contacts”, “Business card” or something else.
❒ The Phone Book can hold a total of 400 entries.
❒ The Hands-free phoning connection is disconnected to establish the connection for phone book transfer. When the phone book is transferred, hands-free phoning is reconnected automatically.
❒ The phone book of this navigation system cannot assign the multiple telephone numbers for one person’s name.

Depending on the mobile phone that is connected to this navigation system via Bluetooth technology, this navigation system may not display the phone book correctly. (Some characters may be garbled or first name and last name may be put in reverse order.)

1 Connect your mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology.
➲ For details, refer to *Registering your mobile phone* on page 62

2 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

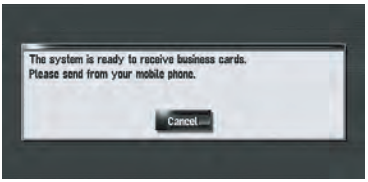
3 Touch [Read Bus. Card].
If there is a phone book already transferred, the following screen appears.



[**Yes**]:
Deletes all phone numbers stored in the phone book, and then transfers the data.
[**No**]:
Keeps the current entries and then adds new data to the phone book. (Duplicate data cannot be consolidated.)

❒ If you want to keep the existing phone book, select [**No**].

4 Check that the following screen is displayed, and operate your mobile phone to transfer the phone book entries.



The phone book entries in your mobile phone are transferred to the navigation system. To cancel the transfer, touch [**Cancel**].

❒ Only the names and telephone numbers can be transferred.

❒ The transferred data can be edited on the navigation system.

➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "Phone Book"* on this page

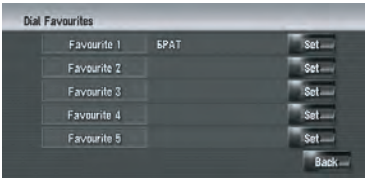
Registering a phone number in "Dial Favourites"

You can register up to five entries into "Dial Favourites" from the phone book. Registering the phone numbers that you frequently use in "Dial Favourites" will ease the dialling operation. The entries registered in "Dial Favourites" can be operated from the shortcut menu. You can also operate them with Voice Recognition to make a call.

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Dial Favourites].

3 Touch [Set] on any of [Favourite 1] — [Favourite 5].



4 Touch the entry you want to register.
The Phone Book Record screen appears.

5 Touch [OK].
The selected entry is registered in the corresponding "Dial Favourite".

Editing the entry in "Phone Book"

You can edit the imported phone book data or add new data. You can edit [**Name**], [**Pronunciation**], [**Phone #**], or [**Picture**]. You can also delete unnecessary data.

❒ The data cannot be transferred back to the mobile phone.

Editing data or adding new data

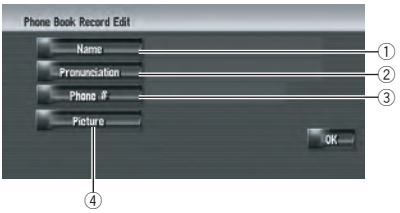
1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the Navigation menu, and touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Phone Book].

3 Touch or [Add].
The edit screen appears.

❒ To add data by entering it as desired, touch [**Add**].

4 Select the entry you want to edit.



① **Name**

Enter the name to be displayed in the phone book.
For more details about operations, please read the following page.
➲ For details, refer to *Changing a name* on page 56
❒ Up to 40 characters can be input for the name.

② **Pronunciation**
You can enter the desired pronunciation independently from the name. The registered pronunciation is used for voice recognition.
For more details about operations, please read the following page.
➲ For details, refer to *Changing a pronunciation* on page 57
❒ Up to 40 characters can be input for the pronunciation.
❒ If nothing is entered in a text box, you cannot use that item as a voice command.
❒ Depending on which language is being switched to, you may not be able to use the registered pronunciation without modification.
➲ For details, refer to *Available Voice Commands* on page 142

③ **Phone #**
Enter the phone number to be displayed in the phone book. Touch [**OK**] to complete the input and return to the previous screen.
❒ Up to 32 characters can be input for the phone number.
❒ The edited names and phone numbers are reflected to the dialled number history and the received call history. However, they are not reflected to the data registered in [**Dial Favourites**].

④ **Picture**
Sets the image to be displayed when a call is received.
➲ For details, refer to *Customising the incoming call picture for a phone book entry* on this page

Customising the incoming call picture for a phone book entry

Be sure to read "*Limitations for importing pictures*" before creating a CD-R (-RW).
➲ For details, refer to *Limitations for importing pictures* on page 78

You can customise a picture for the phone book record. Some pictures are already stored in the hard disk drive, and you can also import JPEG format pictures, such as a picture from your digital camera, by using a CD-R (-RW). You can use pictures by burning them onto a CD-R (-RW) with your PC and insert that into the navigation system.
Here, a method for changing the picture is described with an example of loading a picture stored on a CD-R (-RW) onto the navigation system.
❒ The name of an imported image file may not appear correctly depending on the type of letters used in the name.

1 Check that no disc is inserted, and insert your CD-R (-RW) to the disc loading slot.

2 Touch [Picture], and then touch [Import from Disc].
The list of the pictures stored in the CD-R (-RW) is displayed.
On this screen, you can select the following item:
[**Back to Original**]:
The picture originally used when the system was purchased is selected.
❒ Touching an option other than [**Import from Disc**] allows you to select a background image stored on the hard disk drive.

3 Touch a picture you want to set.

4 Touch [Yes].
On this screen, you can select the following items:
[**No**]:

Select when you want to change to another picture.
Return to Step 3.

Deleting data

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Phone Book].

3 Touch [Delete].
The "Delete from Phone Book" screen appears.

4 Touch the entry you want to delete.
A red tick mark appears next to the selected entry. To cancel the selection, touch the entry again.

5 Touch [Delete].

6 Touch [Yes].
The data is deleted, and the current location screen appears.

❒ To cancel the deletion, touch [**No**].

Editing the received call or dialled number history

You can edit the data in the dialled number history or the received call history. You can edit them and the edited entries are registered in the phone book. You can also delete the history data.

Editing data

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Dialed Numbers] or [Received Calls].

3 Touch .
The edit screen appears. Steps after this are the same as for editing the phone book.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "Phone Book"* on page 68

❒ The phone number cannot be edited if it is already registered in the phone book.

Deleting data

1 Touch [Info/Phone] in the navigation menu, and then touch [Phone Menu].

2 Touch [Dialed Numbers] or [Received Calls].

3 Touch [Delete].

4 Touch [Yes].
All history data is deleted, and the current location screen appears.

❒ To cancel the deletion, touch [**No**].

Notes for hands-free phoning

General notes

- Connection to all mobile phones featuring Bluetooth wireless technology is not guaranteed.
- The line-of-sight distance between this navigation system and your mobile phone must be 10 meters or less when sending and receiving voice and data via Bluetooth technology. However, the transmission distance may become shorter than the estimated distance, depending on the environment in use.
- You cannot delete a registered mobile phone. If you need to delete it, refer to "*Returning the Navigation System to the Default or Factory Settings* on page 164" clear [**Phone Settings**] , and delete it together with other functions.

- With some mobile phones, the speakers of the system may not produce a ring sound.
- If private mode is selected on the mobile phone, hands-free phoning may not be performed.

About registration and connection

- Mobile phone operations varies depending on the type of your mobile phone. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your mobile phone for detailed instructions.

About making and receiving calls

- You may hear a noise in the following situations:
  - — When you answer the phone by using the button on the phone.
  - — When the person on the other end of line hangs up the phone.
- If the person on the other end of the phone call cannot hear the conversation due to an echo, decrease the volume level for hands-free phoning. This may reduce the effects of the echo.
- With some mobile phones, even if you press accept button on the mobile phone when a call arrives, hands-free phoning may not be performed.
- The registered name appears if the phone number of the received call is already registered in the phone book. When one phone number is registered under different names, the name that comes first alphabetically is displayed.
- If the phone number of the received call is not registered in the phone book, the phone number of the received call appears.

About received call history and dialled number history

- Calls made or editing performed only on your mobile phone will not be reflected to the dialled number history or phone book in the navigation system.
- You cannot make a call to the entry of an unknown user (no phone number) in the received call history.
- If calls are made by operating your mobile phone, no history data will be recorded in the navigation system.

About phone book transfer

- With some mobile phones, it may not be possible to transfer all items in the phone book at one time. In this case, transfer items one at a time from your mobile phone.
- If the phone book in the mobile phone contains image data, the phone book may not be transferred correctly. (Image data cannot be transferred from the mobile phone.)
- Depending on the mobile phone, phone book transfer may not be available.

About Cyrillic characters used in mobile phone

- In the following cases, some character may be displayed correctly in “phone book” and the device name of mobile phone.
  - — Characters will be garbled for the entry has both Cyrillic letters and letters with diacritical marks (such as ä or è).
  - — The part of Cyrillic letters may not be appear if the character code is Windows-1251 (CP1251).

CAUTION
For safety reasons, you cannot use some of these navigation functions while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and apply the handbrake (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

Entering Settings Menu

1 Press MENU button to display the navigation menu.

2 Touch [Settings] to display Settings menu.

3 Change the setting.
➲ For more details about "Adjusting each item", refer to Chapter 9

Setting the Volume for Guidance and Phone

The sound volume for the navigation can be set. You can separately set the volume of the route guidance and the beep sound.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Volume].

2 Touch [+] or [-] to set their volume.
On this screen, you can operate the following items.

[**Guidance**]
This setting controls the guidance volume of navigation.
When set to , guidance is output. When set to , no guidance is output.
[**Beep**]
This setting controls the beep tone volume for navigation.
[**Phone Ringtone**]
This setting controls the incoming ring tone volume.
[**Phone Voice**]
This setting controls the incoming voice volume.

- ❒ **Phone Ringtone** and **Phone Voice** adjustments are related to the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology. No adjustment is needed when the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology is not connected.
- ❒ Volume of the audio source is adjusted by **VOL** (▲/▼) button of the navigation system.

3 To finish the setting, touch [OK].

Customising the Regional Settings

Changing the language for navigation guidance and menu

You can select the language to be used for the navigation function. (Once you change the language, the system restarts.)

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Regional Settings].

2 Touch [Language].

3 Touch the language that you want to use.
Once you change the language, the system restarts.

- ❒ Touching [**Back**] returns you to the previous display.

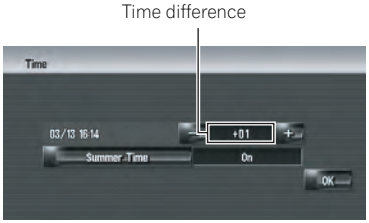
Setting the time difference

Adjusts the systems clock. Set the time difference (**+**, **-**) from the time originally set in your navigation system.
You can also select summer time On/Off.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Regional Settings].

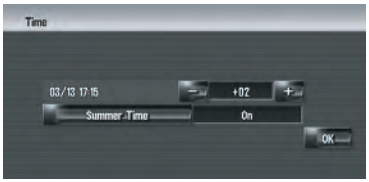
2 Touch [Time].

3 To set the time difference, touch [+] or [-].



The time difference between the time originally set in the navigation system (Moscow Standard Time) and the current location of your vehicle is shown. If necessary, adjust the time difference. Touching [**+**] or [**-**] changes the time difference display in one-hour increments.
The time difference can be set from **+9** to **-4** hours.

4 If necessary, set to summer time.
Summer time is off by default. Touch [**Summer Time**] to change the time if you are in the summer time period. This turns the display below summer time [**On**].



5 To finish the setting, touch [OK].

Setting the keyboard layout

You can set the layout of the keyboard.
- ❒ This setting has no effect on the keyboard in [**Address Search**], [**POI Search**].
- ❒ When [**Cyrillic**] is set, you can toggle the keyboard between Cyrillic letters and Latin letters (A – Z, a - z).

➲ For details, refer to ***Operation of street name or city name input screen (e.g.* Cyrillic *keyboard)*** on page 24

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Regional Settings].

2 Touch [Keyboard] to select the layout that you want to use.
Each time you touch the key changes that setting.
[**Cyrillic**] (default):

[**QWERTY**]

[**QWERTZ**]:

[**ABC**]:

[**AZERTY**]:

Changing the unit between km and miles

This setting controls the unit of distance and speed displayed on your navigation system.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Regional Settings].

2 Touch [km / mile] to change the setting.
Each time you touch the key changes that setting.
[**km**] (default):
Show distance in kilometres.
[**mile**]:
Show distance in miles.
[**Mile&Yard**]:
Show distance in miles and yards.

Changing the virtual speed of the vehicle

When calculating the expected time of arrival and the number of hours to the destination, set the average speed for the motorway or ordinary roads using [**+**] and [**-**].

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Regional Settings].

2 Touch [Average Speed].

3 Touch [+] or [-] to set the speed.

❒ The estimated time of arrival is not necessarily estimated based on this speed value.■

Checking the Setting Related with Hardware

The hardware status, including the driving status of a vehicle, positioning status by satellite, learning status of the 3D sensor, and cable connection status, can be checked.

Checking the connections of leads and installation positions

Check that leads are properly connected between the navigation system and the vehicle. Please also check whether they are connected in the correct positions.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Hardware].

2 Touch [Connection Status].
The “Connection Status” screen appears.

① **Speed Pulse**
The Speed Pulse value detected by the navigation system is shown. [0] is shown while the vehicle is stationary.

② **GPS Antenna**
Indicates the connection status of the GPS aerial, the reception sensitivity, and from how many satellites the signal is received. If the signal is received correctly, [**OK**] is displayed. If reception is poor, [**NOK**] appears. In such case, please change the installation position of the GPS aerial.

③ **Phone Connection Status**
Indicates the connection status of the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) and the signal strength between the Bluetooth unit and the mobile phone. If the Bluetooth unit is connected correctly, [**OK**] is displayed. [**NOK**] appears when the Bluetooth unit is not connected or incorrectly connected.

④ **Installation Position**

The installation position of the navigation system is shown. That indicates whether the installation position of the navigation system is correct or not. If installed correctly, [**OK**] appears. When the navigation system is installed at an extreme angle exceeding the limitation of the installing angle, [**Incorrect angle**] will be displayed. When the angle of the navigation system has been changed, [**Excessive vibration**] will be displayed.

⑤ **Handbrake**
When the handbrake is applied, [**On**] is displayed. When the handbrake is released, [**Off**] is displayed.

⑥ **Power Voltage**
The power voltage (reference value) provided from the vehicle battery to the navigation system is shown. If the voltage goes out of the range from 11 V to 15 V, check that power cable connection is correct.

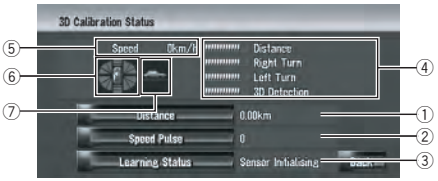
⑦ **Illumination**
When the headlights or small lamps of a vehicle are on, [**On**] is displayed. When the small lamps of a vehicle are off, [**Off**] is displayed. (If the orange/white lead is not connected, [**Off**] appears.)

⑧ **Back Signal**
When the gear lever is shifted to "**R**", the signal switches to [**High**] or [**Low**]. (One of these is displayed depending on the vehicle.)

Checking sensor learning status and driving status

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Hardware].

2 Touch [3D Calibration Status].
The 3D Calibration Status screen appears.



① **Distance**
Driving distance is indicated.

② **Speed Pulse**
Total number of speed pulses is indicated.

③ **Learning Status**
Current driving mode is indicated.

④ **Degree of learning**
Sensor learning situations for distance (**Distance**), right turn (**Right Turn**), left turn (**Left Turn**) and 3D detection (**3D Detection**) are indicated by the length of bars.

- ❒ When tyres have been changed or chains fitted, turning on the Speed Pulse allows the system to detect the fact that the tyre diameter has changed, and automatically replaces the value for calculating distance.
- ❒ If ND-PG1 is connected, the distance calculation value cannot be replaced automatically.

⑤ **Speed**
The speed detected by the navigation system is indicated. (This indication may be different from the actual speed of your vehicle, so please do not use this instead of the speedometer.)

⑥ **Acceleration or deceleration/Rotational speed**
Acceleration or deceleration velocity of your vehicle is indicated. Also, rotational speed when your vehicle turns to left or right is shown.

⑦ **Inclination**
Degree of slope of the street that you are currently running is indicated.

To clear values...

If you want to delete the learned results stored in [**Distance**], [**Speed Pulse**] or [**Learning Status**], touch the relevant result, then touch [**Yes**].

- ❒ If you select [**Learning Status**], you can select [**Reset All**] or [**Reset Distance Study**]. To clear all learning statuses, touch [**Reset All**]. To clear only the Distance study, touch [**Reset Distance Study**].
- ❒ Touch [**Reset All**] for the following cases:
  - — After changing the installation position of the navigation system
  - — After changing the installation angle of the navigation system
  - — After moving the navigation system to another vehicle
- ❒ When the distance accuracy is low, touch [**Reset Distance Study**].
- ❒ Touching [**Reset All**] returns the installation angle setting also to the default or factory setting. Reconfigure the setting.

➲ For details, refer to *Correcting the installation angle* on this page

- ❒ The navigation system can automatically use its sensor memory based on the outer dimensions of the tyres.

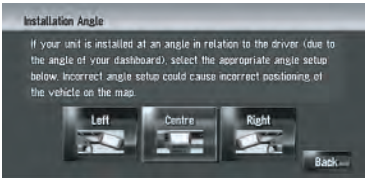
Correcting the installation angle

You can correct the installation angle of the navigation system. Correcting the installation angle improves the accuracy of sensor learning, even if the unit is not facing centre. Select the orientation of the LCD panel from the left, centre, and right.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Hardware].

2 Touch [Installation Angle Setup].

3 Check the direction the LCD panel faces, and touch the corresponding item.


Installation Angle
If your unit is installed at an angle in relation to the driver (due to the angle of your dashboard), select the appropriate angle setup below. Incorrect angle setup could cause incorrect positioning of the vehicle on the map.
Left
Centre
Right
Back

[**Left**]:
Select this when the angle is 5° or more to the left from the centre.
[**Centre**] (default):
Select this when the angle is less than 5° to the left and right from the centre.
[**Right**]:
Select this when the angle is 5° or more to the right from the centre.

- ❒ If [**Learning Status**] in [**3D Calibration Status**] is [**Simple Hybrid**], the installation angle can be corrected.

Checking the device and version information

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Hardware].

2 Touch [Service Info Screen].

3 Check the device and version information.

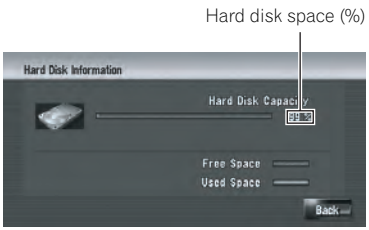
Checking the hard disk information

You can check the volume of the hard disk, current used space and remaining space.

- ❒ The hard disk space (%) means free space of the music library. In some cases, even when about 10 % of free space is left, no more music tracks may be recorded due to system restriction.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Hardware].

2 Touch [Hard Disk Info].

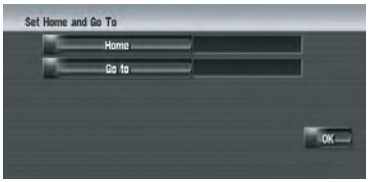


Registering the Home Location and Favourite Location

You can register one home location and one favourite location. You can change the registered information later. You might find it useful to register your workplace or a relative's home as your favourite location.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Defined Locations].

2 Touch [Go to].
When registering your home location, touch [**Home**].



3 Search for a location to register.
You can select a method of location search.

➲ For more details about "Address Search", refer to *Calculating your destination by using Address Search* on page 23

➲ For more details about "Information on searching for locations to register", refer to Chapter 6

❒ If you select [**Map Search**], move the scroll cursor to the place you want to set and touch [**OK**].

4 Point the scroll cursor to the location you want to register and touch [OK].
The location is registered, and the Edit registered information screen appears.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "***Address Book***"* on page 55

5 Touch [OK].
Completes the registration.

Changing the Background Picture

Be sure to read "*Limitations for importing pictures*" before creating a CD-R (-RW) and "*Precautions when changing the Splash Screen*".
➲ For details, refer to *Limitations for importing pictures* on the next page
➲ For details, refer to *Precautions when changing the Splash Screen* on page 79

In the menu operation screen, you can customise a picture for the background. Some pictures are already stored in the hard disk drive, and you can also import JPEG format pictures, such as a picture from your digital camera, by using a CD-R (-RW). You can use pictures as background pictures by burning them onto a CD-R (-RW) with your PC and inserting it into the navigation system.
The following types of background pictures can be changed:

- **Splash Screen**: The screen that appears when the Navigation system starts up.
- **Navigation Background**: Background picture of the navigation menu screen.
- **AV Background**: Background picture during the operation of audio source screen.

Here, a method for changing the background picture is described with an example of loading a picture stored on a CD-R (-RW) onto the navigation system as the background picture.

1 Check that no disc is inserted, and insert your CD-R (-RW) to the disc loading slot.

2 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Background Picture Setting].

The picture selected for each screen is indicated on the right side of [**Splash Screen**], [**Navigation Background**] and [**AV Background**] items.

3 Touch [Splash Screen], [Navigation Background] or [AV Background].

4 Touch [Import from Disc].

The list of the pictures stored in the CD-R (-RW) is displayed.

On this screen, you can select the following item:

[**Back to Original**], [**Back to PIONEER Original**]:

The picture originally used when the system was purchased is selected.

- ❒ Touching an option other than [**Import from Disc**] allows you to select a background image stored on the hard disk drive.

5 Touch a picture you want to set.

6 Touch [OK].

If you touch [**OK**], the background image starts changing. After a short while, the confirmation screen appears.

- ❒ When the image has a large file size, it takes more time to change the Background Picture. Do not perform other operations until the message "**Updating. Please do not turn off the power.**" disappears.
- ❒ If you want to change to another picture, touch [**Back**] to return to Step 4.
- ❒ When the picture starts to change, do not turn off the vehicle engine until the message appears to indicate that the picture has finished changing.

Limitations for importing pictures

When you burn a CD-R (-RW), make sure the total data size of the CD-R (-RW) is greater than 100 MB by storing dummy data or other filler information. Otherwise, the disc may not be recognised by the built-in DVD drive.

- ❒ You cannot use a CD-R (-RW) containing MP3 files or Audio data (CD-DA part) for importing pictures.
- ❒ When storing pictures on a CD-R (-RW), create a folder named "**Pictures**" in the CD-R (-RW), and store the picture files in this folder. (Up to 200 picture files can be used in total, including pictures that are already stored in the hard disk drive and pictures in the CD-R (-RW).)

- When you burn a CD-R (-RW), limit the number of folder hierarchy levels to eight.
- You can only use a CD-R (-RW) finalised with single-session for importing pictures.
- You can only use a CD-R (-RW) finalised with "Mode1" for importing pictures.
- Only JPEG format (".jpg" or ".JPG") pictures can be used. Progressive format JPEG pictures cannot be used.
- Using only the standard Latin characters (alphabets of both cases: A-Z, a-z) and numbers (0-9) is recommended for the file name. If you want to use Cyrillic letters or letters with diacritical marks (such as ä or è) for file name, finalise the CD-R(-RW) with Joliet (Unicode) format.
- Pictures up to a maximum of 2 592 x 1 944 pixels can be used. We cannot guarantee proper operation for a picture bigger than this size.
- After changing a set image that was imported from a CD-R (-RW), you must use the CD-R (-RW) where the image is recorded to restore the previous Splash Screen.

Precautions when changing the Splash Screen

The following is the default Splash Screen for the Navigation System.
[**PIONEER Original**]

If an image other than the one shown above is previously set (such as an image from the dealer or other source) and you change the Splash Screen once, you must use the CD-R (-RW) where the image is recorded to restore the previous Splash Screen.

Using the Demonstration Guidance

This is a demonstration function for shops. After a route is set, the simulation of the route guidance to a destination is automatically displayed. Normally, set this to [**Off**].

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu.

2 Touch [Demo Mode] to change the setting.
Each time you touch the key changes that setting.
[**On**]:
Repeat demo drive.
[**Off**] (default):
Demo Mode is set off.

Correcting the Current Location

Touch the screen to adjust the current position and direction of the vehicle displayed on the map.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Modify Current Location].

2 Scroll to the position where you want to set, then touch [OK].

3 Touch the arrow key on the screen to set the direction, then touch [OK].

Restoring the Default Setting

Resets various settings registered to the navigation system and restores to the default or factory settings.

1 Touch [Settings] in the navigation menu, then touch [Restore Factory Settings].

2 Touch [Yes] to clear the current setting.

❒ Touch [**No**] to cancel clear the current setting.

➲ For details, refer to *Returning the Navigation System to the Default or Factory Settings* on page 164.

You can play or use the following sources with the navigation system.

- DVD-Video
- CD
- MP3 disc
- Radio (FM)
- Radio (AM)
- Music Library

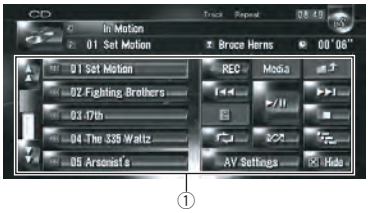
➲ For more details about “music library”, refer to Chapter 11

This chapter describes how to use the AV source and the basic operation of the AV source.

Basic Operation

Switching the Audio operation screen

● **Press AV button to switch Audio operation screen.**



① **Touch panel keys**

❒ Touch [**Hide**] to hide the touch panel keys. If you touch the screen, the touch panel keys are displayed again.

Selecting a source

Select a source on “AV Source Menu”

1 Press AV button to switch Audio operation screen.

2 Touch the source icon.

Source icon

①

3 Touch the desired source.

❒ Touch [**OFF**] to turn the source off.

❒ Touch [**REAR SCREEN**] to select the source for “Rear display”.

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting the video for “Rear display”* on page 134

Select a source by using AV button

You can press **AV** button to switch the source.

1 Press AV button to switch Audio operation screen.

2 Press AV button to select the desired source.

Press **AV** button repeatedly to switch between the following sources:

[**CD**/**ROM** (MP3)/**DVD**] (built-in DVD drive) — [**LIBRARY**] (Music library) — [**FM**] (FM tuner) — [**AM**] (AM tuner) — [**iPod**] (iPod) — [**M-CD**] (multi-CD) — [**TV**] (television) — [**AV INPUT**] (video input) — [**AUX**] (auxiliary equipment) — [**EXT 1**] (external unit 1) — [**EXT 2**] (external unit 2)

- In the following cases, the sound source cannot to be used:
  - When a unit corresponding to each source is not connected to the navigation system.
  - When no disc is set in the navigation system.
  - When no magazine is set in the multi-CD player.
  - When [**AUX Input**] is set to [**Off**].
    ➲ For details, refer to *Switching the auxiliary setting* on page 131
  - When [**AV Input**] is not set to [**Video**].
    ➲ For details, refer to *Setting the video input* on page 131
- The term "external unit" refers to future Pioneer devices that are not currently planned for, or devices that allow control of basic functions although they are not fully controlled by the navigation system. Two external units can be controlled by this navigation system. When two external units are connected, the navigation system allocates them to external unit 1 or external unit 2.
- When [**Auto ANT**] mode is set to[**Radio**], the vehicle's aerial can be stowed or turned off by following the instructions below.
  - Change the source from radio (AM or FM) to another source.
  - Turn the source off.
  - Turn off the ignition switch (ACC OFF).

  If [**Auto ANT**] mode is set to [**Power**], the vehicle's aerial can be stowed or turned off only when the ACC is set to "OFF".
  ➲ For more details about "[**Auto ANT**]", refer to *Switching the auto aerial setting* on page 132

About Steering Remote Control

- When using "CD-SR1" Steering Remote Control (sold separately), the following buttons can be used for operation:

PHONE MENU button
Switches to Phone menu when Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is connected.

VR ACTIVATION / OFF HOOK button
Press to accept the call when there is an incoming call.
In other situations, press to start the voice operation.

VR CANCEL / ON HOOK button
Press to reject a call when there is an incoming call.
Press to hang up the phone during talking on the phone.
In voice operation, return to the previous screen.

▲ ▼ button:
Same function as **P.LIST** (▲/▼) button.

◄ ► button:
Same function as **TRK** (◄/►) button.

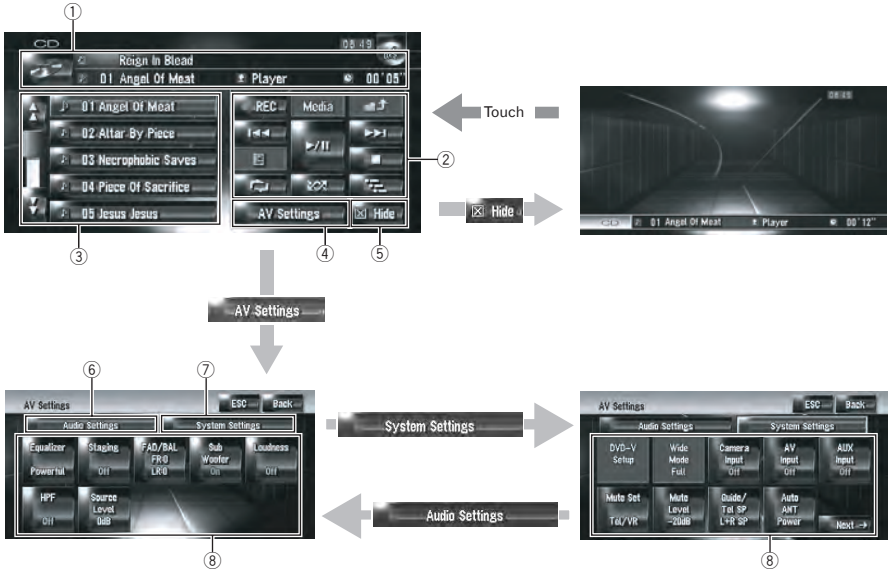
+, – button:
Same function as **VOL** (▼/▲) button.

BAND button:
Same function as [**Band**] touch panel key.

SOURCE button:
Same function as **AV** button.

Viewing the audio operation screen and displaying the Audio Settings menu

Normal screen (e.g. CD)



① **Information plate**
Displays the information (e.g. track title) about the source being played.

② **Touch panel keys**
Touch to operate the source being played.

③ **Detailed information**
Displays the detailed information about the source being played.

④ **AV Settings key**
Displays the **AV Settings** menu.

⑤ **Hide key**
Touch [**Hide**] to hide the touch panel keys and detailed information. If you touch the screen, they are displayed again.

⑥ **Audio Settings tab**
Switches the setting items to those for **Audio Settings**.

⑦ **System Settings tab**
Switches the setting items to those for **System Settings**.

⑧ **Setting Items**

➲ For details, refer to *Customising the Audio Setting related with Audio Visual* on page 123

Operating a Music CD

You can play a normal music CD using the built-in DVD drive of the navigation unit. This section describes that operations.

Selecting [CD] as the source

- **Press OPEN CLOSE button and insert a disc you want to play to disc loading slot.**

The source changes and then playback will start.

❒ If the disc is already set, touch the source icon and then touch [**CD**].
➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

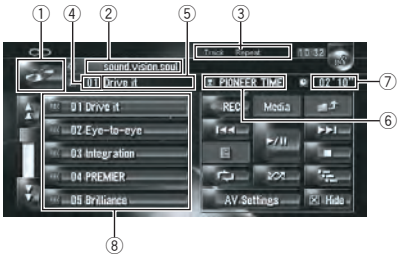
❒ When being read in, **Checking disc** is displayed.

About auto hard disk recording

The Navigation system can record the tracks from a music CD into the hard disk drive. In default setting, the system starts recording automatically when an unrecorded music CD is inserted.
If you want to cancel the recording, touch [**Stop**].

➲ For more details about “Setting the hard disk recording mode”, refer to *Setting the CD recording mode* on page 133
➲ For details, refer to *Music Library Recording* on page 100
➲ For details, refer to *Music Library Play* on page 102
❒ Also see at “Handling and Care of the Disc” in the hardware manual and “*Detail Information for Playable Media* on page 176” for more cautions about handling each type of media.

Screen configuration



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.
② **Disc title indicator**
Shows the title of the disc currently playing. (when available.)
③ **Playback method indicator**
Shows which playback method has been selected.
④ **Track number indicator**
Shows the number of the track currently playing.
⑤ **Track title indicator**
Shows the title of the track currently playing. (when available.)
⑥ **Artist name indicator**
Shows the name of the artist currently playing. (when available.)
⑦ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current track.
⑧ **Track list**
Shows tracks of the CD currently playing.

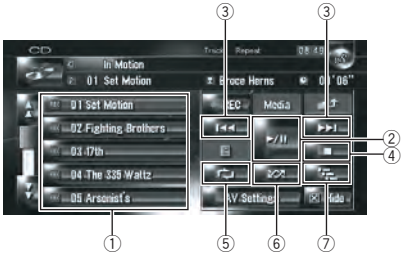
Title display

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.
❒ Title information will be displayed when the information is found in the Gracenote® Database on the built-in hard disk drive. If you insert a CD-TEXT disc*, the system prioritises the title information encoded in CD-TEXT disc.
*: Some discs have text information encoded on the disc during manufacture. These discs may contain such information as the CD title, track title, and artist's name. These discs are called CD-TEXT discs.
❒ If Cyrillic letters are used in the CD-TEXT information, the information cannot be displayed correctly.
❒ When multiple options for the title information are found or no title information exists, [-] is displayed.

❒ The title information displayed on the CD playback screen and the recording screen is synchronised with the one edited in the music library. Once you edit the title information in the music library, the title displayed on each screen will change accordingly.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing a playlist or tracks* on page 107
❒ Up to 32 characters can be entered. But the navigation system incorporates proportional font. Therefore, the number of the characters that you can display varies according to the type of character.
❒ If the built-in DVD drive does not operate properly, an error message may be displayed.
➲ For details, refer to *Messages for Audio Functions* on page 161

Touch panel key operation

Touch panel keys



① **Select a desired track from the list**
Touch a desired track to play.
② **Playback and Pause**
Touching ►/II switches between "playback" and "pause".
③ **Touch: Skip the track forward or backward**
Touching ►►I skips to the start of the next track.
Touching I◄◄ once skips to the start of the current track. Touching again will skip to the previous track.
Touch and hold: Fast rewind or forward
Keep touching I◄◄ or ►►I to perform fast rewind or forward.
❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.
❒ Fast rewind is cancelled when it reaches the beginning of the first track on the disc.
④ **Stop playback**
When you stop playback by touching ■, that track number on the disc is memorised, enabling playback from that track when you play the disc again.
❒ To play the disc again, touch ►/II.
⑤ **Repeat the current track**
Each touch of turns the repeat play on or off.
"**Track Repeat**" is displayed on the playback method indicator during track repeat.
❒ If you perform track search or fast forward or rewind, repeat play is automatically cancelled.
⑥ **Play tracks in a random order**
Touching turns the random play on or off.
⑦ **Scan tracks of a CD**
Touching turns the scan play on or off. Scan play lets you hear the first 10 seconds of each track on the CD. When you find the desired track touch to turn scan play off.
❒ After scanning of a CD is finished, normal playback of the tracks will begin again.

Operating the CD-ROM (MP3 disc)

You can play an MP3 disc using the built-in DVD drive of the navigation unit. This section describes those operations.

Selecting [ROM] as the source

● **Press OPEN CLOSE button and insert the disc that you want to play into disc loading slot.**

The source changes and then playback will start.

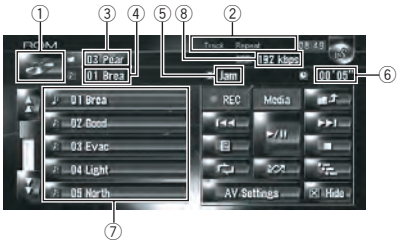
❒ If the disc is already set, touch the source icon and then touch [**ROM**].

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

❒ While loading, **Checking disc** is displayed.

❒ Also see "Handling and Care of the Disc" in the hardware manual and "*Detail Information for Playable Media* on page 176" in this manual for more cautions about handling each media.

Screen configuration



❒ If the MP3 file and folder name includes Cyrillic letters or letters with diacritical marks (such as ä or è), the file name cannot be displayed correctly.

① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **Playback method indicator**
Shows which playback method has been selected.

③ **Folder indicator**
Shows the folder number and folder name currently playing. When an ID3 tag has been encoded on the file, the disc title will be shown instead of the folder name.

④ **Track indicator**
Shows the track number and file name of the track currently playing. When an ID3 tag has been encoded on the file, the track title will be shown instead of the file name.

⑤ **Artist name indicator**
Shows the artist name currently playing only when an ID3 tag has been encoded on the MP3 file.

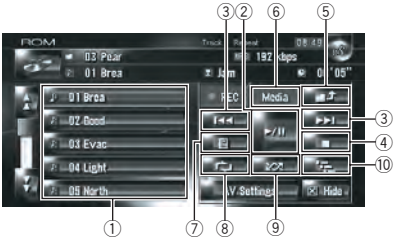
⑥ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current track.

⑦ **Folder and track list**
Shows contents of the folder currently playing or temporarily displayed.

⑧ **Bit rate**
Shows the bit rate of the file currently playing.

Touch panel key operation

Touch panel keys



① **Select tracks from the list or viewing contents of the folders**
The list lets you see the list of track titles or folder names on a disc. If you touch a folder on the list, you can view its contents. If you touch a track on the list, you can play the selected track.

❒ Touching ▲ or ▼ switches to the next or previous page in the list.

❒ If the selected folder does not contain any track that can be played, the track list is not displayed.

② **Playback and Pause**
Touching ►/II switches between "playback" and "pause".

③ **Touch: Skip forward or backward**

Touching ►►I skips to the start of the next track. Touching I◄◄ once skips to the start of the current track. Touching again will skip to the previous track.

Touch and hold: Fast rewind or forward

Keep touching I◄◄ or ►►I to perform fast rewind or forward.

- ❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.
- ❒ Fast rewind is cancelled when it reaches the beginning of the first track on the disc.
- ❒ In the case of MP3, there is no sound on fast rewind or forward.

④ **Stop playback**

When you stop playback by touching ■, that track number on the disc is memorised, enabling playback from that track when you play the disc again.

- ❒ To play the disc again, touch ►/II.

⑤ **Select upper folder**

Touch to move to the upper folder and play back the first track on that folder. If the folder contain no MP3 files, the contents of that folder are shown.

- ❒ If the current folder is the ROOT folder, can not be used.

⑥ **Switch mode between MP3 and music CD (CD-DA)**

When playing discs with MP3 files and audio data (CD-DA) such as CD-EXTRA and MIXED-MODE CDs, both types can be played only by switching mode between MP3 and CD-DA. Touching [**Media**] switches between CD-DA part and MP3 part.

⑦ **Display text information on MP3 disc**

Text information recorded on an MP3 disc can be displayed.

The next piece of information is displayed.

- **Disc Title** (disc title)*
- **Track Title** (track title)*
- **Folder Title** (folder name)
- **File Name** (file name)
- **Artist Name** (artist name)*
- **Genre** (genre)*
- **Release Year** (release year)*

- ❒ The information marked with an asterisk (*) is displayed only when an ID3 tag has been encoded on MP3 files on the disc. If specific information of the ID3 tag has not been encoded on MP3 files on disc, the corresponding item may be blank.

⑧ **Repeat play**

Each touch of changes the settings as follows:

- **Track Repeat** — Repeat just the current track
- **Folder Repeat** — Repeat the folder currently playing

- ❒ If you select another track or perform fast forward/rewind during **Track Repeat**, the repeat play is cancelled.
- ❒ If you select another folder or perform fast forward/rewind during **Folder Repeat**, the repeat play is cancelled. (You can perform track search within that folder with Folder repeat.)
- ❒ When **Folder Repeat** is selected, it is not possible to play back a subfolder of that folder.

⑨ **Play tracks in random order**

Touching switches between playing tracks randomly or sequentially within a selected repeat range.

⑩ **Scan folders and tracks**

Touching turns the scan play on or off. Scan play will be performed for the selected repeat range.

- ❒ In default, the beginning of the first track of each folder will be played for about 10 seconds. When "**Folder Repeat**" is selected for repeat play, the beginning of each track in the selected folder will play for about 10 seconds. When you find the desired track, touch to turn scan play off.
- ❒ After track or folder scanning is finished, normal playback of the tracks will begin again.

Notes on playing MP3 disc

- ❒ When playing discs with MP3 files and audio data (CD-DA) such as CD-EXTRA and MIXED-MODE CDs, both types can be played only by switching mode between MP3 and CD-DA. When playing back the CD-DA part, the operation is the same as for normal music CDs. Likewise, when playing back the MP3 part, the operation is the same as for MP3. Refer to the instructions for each type of media.
- ❒ If you have switched between playback of MP3 files and audio data (CD-DA), playback starts at the first track on the disc.
- ❒ Playback is carried out in order of file number. Folders are skipped if they contain no MP3 files. (For example, if folder 01 (ROOT) contains no MP3 files, playback commences with folder 02.)
- ❒ When playing back files recorded as VBR (variable bit rate) files, the play time will not be correctly displayed if fast forward or reverse operations are used.
- ❒ If the built-in DVD drive does not operate properly, an error message may be displayed.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Messages for Audio Functions* on page 161
- ❒ Cyrillic display is only supported on ID3 tags if the character code is Windows-1251 (CP1251). ▣

Operating the DVD

⚠ CAUTION

For safety reasons, video images cannot be viewed while your vehicle is in motion. To view video images, you must stop in a safe place and put on the handbrake before setting your route (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

You can play a DVD-Video using the built-in DVD drive of the navigation system. This section describes operations for DVD-Video.

Selecting [DVD] as the source

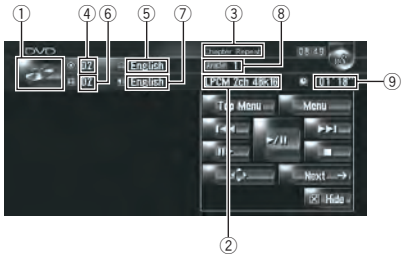
● **Press OPEN CLOSE button and insert a disc you want to play to disc loading slot.**

The source changes and then playback will start.

- ❒ If the disc is already set, touch the source icon and then touch [**DVD**].
  ➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

- ❒ Also see “Handling and Care of the Disc” in the hardware manual and “*Detail Information for Playable Media* on page 176” in this manual for more cautions about handling DVD-Video.

Screen configuration



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **Sound output indicator**
Shows which sound output setting has been selected.

③ **Repeat range indicator**
Shows which repeat range has been selected.

④ **Title number indicator**
Shows the title number currently playing.

⑤ **Subtitle language indicator**
Shows what subtitle language has been selected.

⑥ **Chapter number indicator**
Shows the chapter currently playing.

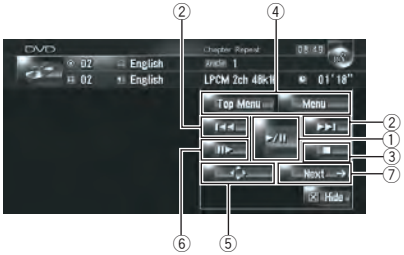
⑦ **Audio language indicator**
Shows what audio language has been selected.

⑧ **Viewing angle indicator**
Shows what viewing angle has been selected.

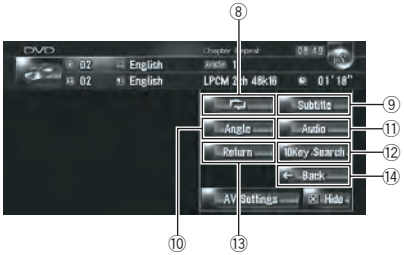
⑨ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current chapter.

Touch panel key operation

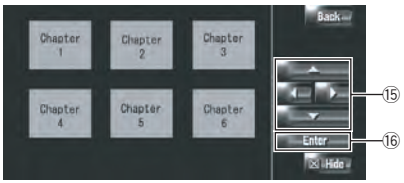
Playback screen (page1)



Playback screen (page2)



Menu screen



❒ With some discs, the icon ⃠ may be displayed, meaning that the operation is not valid.

① **Playback and Pause**
Touching ►/II switches between "playback" and "pause".

② **Touch: Skip forward or backward**
Touching ►►I skips to the start of the next chapter. Touching I◄◄ once skips to the start of the current chapter. Touching again will skip to the previous chapter.

Touch and hold: Fast rewind or forward
Keep touching I◄◄ or ►►I to perform fast rewind or forward. If you keep touching I◄◄ or ►►I for five seconds, the icon ◄◄ or ►► changes into ◁◁ or ▷▷. When this happens, fast rewind/ fast forward continues even if you release I◄◄ or ►►I. To resume playback at a desired point, touch ►/II, I◄◄ or ►►I.

❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.

③ **Stop playback**

④ **Display the DVD menu**
You can display the menu by touching [**Menu**] or [**Top Menu**] while a disc is playing. Touching either of these keys again lets you start playback from the location selected from the menu. For details, refer to the instructions provided with the disc.

⑤ **Display the DVD menu keypad**

⑥ **Frame-by-frame playback (or slow-motion playback)**
Touch and hold to start slow-motion playback. Touching this during playback pauses the image and each touch forwards a frame.
To return to normal playback, touch ►/II.

❒ With some discs, images may be unclear during frame-by-frame playback or slow motion playback.

❒ There is no sound during slow motion playback.

❒ Reverse slow motion playback is not possible.

⑦ **Switch next page of touch panel keys**

⑧ **Repeat play**
Each touch of the changes the settings as follows:

- **Chapter Repeat** — Repeat just the current chapter
- **Title Repeat** — Repeat just the current title

❒ If you perform chapter (title) search, fast forward/rewind, or slow motion playback, the repeat play range changes to off.

⑨ **Change the subtitle language (Multi-subtitle)**

Each time you touch [**Subtitle**], the DVD switches between subtitle language.

⑩ **Change the viewing angle (Multi-angle)**
Each time you touch [**Angle**], the DVD switches between viewing angles.
- ❒ During playback of a scene shot from multiple angles, the angle icon is displayed. Turn the angle icon display on or off using "**DVD-V Setup**" menu.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting angle icon display* on page 129

⑪ **Change audio language and audio systems (Multi-audio)**
Each time you touch [**Audio**], the DVD switches between audio language and audio system.
- ❒ Display indications such as Dolby D and 5.1ch indicate the audio system recorded on the DVD. Depending on the setting, playback may not be with the same audio system as that indicated.

⑫ **Specify the chapter you want to play back or the time to start playback by entering a number**
➲ For details, refer to *Searching for a desired scene, starting playback from a specified time* on this page

⑬ **Perform the operation (such as resuming) stored in the disc**
When using a DVD that has a point recorded that indicates where to return to, the DVD returns to the specified point and begins play back from that point.

⑭ **Switch to the previous page of touch panel keys**

⑮ **Select the DVD menu item**

⑯ **Decide the item**
When you select a certain video item, playback starts from the selected item. When you select an item with a submenu, the next menu screen will appear.
- ❒ The way to display the menu differs depending on the disc. For details, refer to the instructions provided with disc.

Searching for a desired scene, starting playback from a specified time

You can search for a desired scene by specifying a title or a chapter, and the time.
- ❒ Chapter search and time search are not possible when disc playback has been stopped.

1 Touch [10Key Search] and then touch [Title] (title), [Chapter] (chapter), [Time] (time).

2 Touch the keys to input the desired number.

For titles, chapters
- To select 3, touch [**3**].
- To select 10, touch [**1**] and [**0**] in order.
- To select 23, touch [**2**] and [**3**] in order.

For time (time search)
- To select 21 minutes 03 seconds, touch [**2**], [**1**], [**Min**], and [**3**], [**Sec**] in order.
- To select 71 minutes 00 seconds, touch [**7**], [**1**], [**Min**] in order.

- ❒ To cancel the input numbers, touch [**Clear**].

3 While the input number is displayed, touch [Enter].

This starts playback from the selected scene.
- ❒ With discs featuring a menu, you can also touch [**Menu**] or [**Top Menu**] and then make selections from the displayed menu.

Entering the numerical commands

You can use this function when you need to enter a numerical command during DVD playback.

1 Touch [10Key Search] and then touch [10key Mode] (10key mode).

2 Touch 0 — 9 to input the desired number.

3 While the input number is displayed, touch [Enter].

Operating the Radio (FM)

You can listen to the radio by using the navigation system. This section describes operations for Radio (FM).

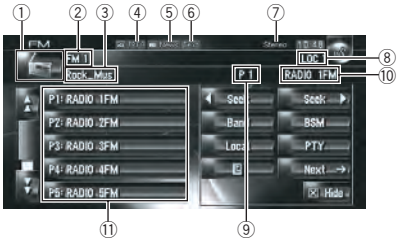
The functions related to RDS (Radio Data System) are available only in areas with FM stations broadcasting RDS signals. Even if the navigation system is receiving an RDS station, not all the functions related with RDS are available.

Selecting [FM] as the source

- **Touch the source icon and touch [FM].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration



If received information includes Cyrillic, the information cannot be displayed correctly.

① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **Band indicator**
Shows which band the radio is tuned to: FM1 to FM3.

③ **PTY indicator**
Shows the programme type of the current station (when available).

④ **TRFC indicator***
Shows the status of traffic announcements.

⑤ **NEWS indicator***
Shows the status of news programmes.

⑥ **TEXT indicator**
Shows when the radio text is received.

⑦ **STEREO indicator**
Shows that the frequency selected is being broadcast in stereo.

⑧ **LOCAL indicator**
Shows when local seek tuning is on.

⑨ **Preset number indicator**
Shows what preset has been selected.

⑩ **Programme service name indicator**
Shows the programme service name (station name) of current station. If the programme service name (station name) cannot be received, the frequency will be displayed instead.

⑪ **Preset list display**
Shows the name of broadcast programme. If the programme service name (station name) cannot be received, the frequency will be displayed instead.

❒ For more details about items marked with (*), refer to "*About interruption icon status (e.g.* **TRFC** *icon)*".

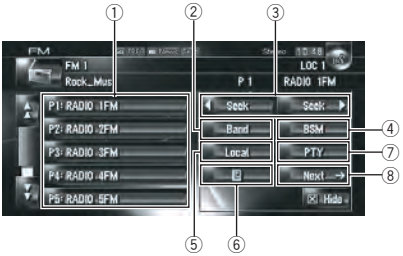
➲ For details, refer to *About interruption icon status (e.g.* **TRFC** *icon)* on page 95

Touch panel key operation

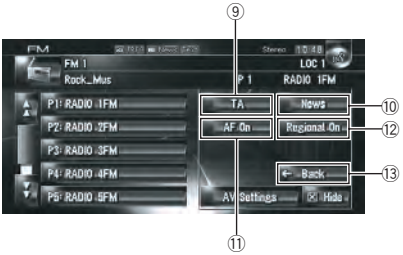
- **Touch the source icon and then touch [FM] to select the radio (FM).**

When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys (page1)



Touch panel keys (page2)



① **Touch: Recall the preset station**
Touch and hold: Store the broadcast station
You can register the frequency currently being received to the preset list. You can easily store up to six broadcast frequencies for later recall with the touch of a key.
- ❒ Up to 18 stations, 6 for each of three FM bands can be stored in memory.

② **Select a FM band**
Touch [**Band**] repeatedly until the desired FM band is displayed, **FM 1**, **FM 2** or **FM 3**.
- ❒ This function is convenient to prepare different preset lists for each band.

③ **Touch: Perform manual tuning**
To perform manual tuning, touch Seek or Seek briefly. The frequencies move up or down one step.
Touch and hold: Perform seek tuning
To perform seek tuning, keep touching Seek or Seek for about one second and release. The tuner will scan the frequencies until a broadcast strong enough for good reception is found.
- ❒ You can cancel seek tuning by touching either Seek or Seek briefly.
- ❒ If you keep touching Seek or Seek, you can skip broadcasting frequencies. Seek tuning starts as soon as you release the keys.
- ❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.

④ **Store the strongest broadcast frequencies**
➲ For details, refer to *Storing the strongest broadcast frequencies* on page 99

⑤ **Tune in strong signals**
➲ For details, refer to *Tuning in strong signals* on page 99

⑥ **Display and store the radio text**
➲ For details, refer to *Using radio text* on the next page

⑦ **Search for an RDS station by PTY information**
➲ For details, refer to *Searching for an RDS station by PTY information* on page 94

⑧ **Switch to the next page of touch panel keys**

⑨ **Turn TA function on or off**
➲ For details, refer to *Receiving traffic announcements* on page 94

⑩ **Turn NEWS function on or off**
➲ For details, refer to *Using news programme interruption* on page 95

⑪ **Select alternative frequencies**
➲ For details, refer to *Selecting alternative frequencies (AF)* on page 95

⑫ **Limit stations to regional programming**
➲ For details, refer to *Limiting stations to regional programming* on page 96

⑬ **Switch to the previous page of touch panel keys**

Storing the strongest broadcast frequencies

"**BSM**" (best stations memory) lets you automatically store the six strongest broadcast frequencies under preset tuning keys [**P1**] — [**P6**] and once stored there you can tune in to those frequencies with a touch of the key.

- **Touch and hold [BSM].**

"**BSM**" starts. The six strongest broadcast frequencies will be stored under preset tuning keys [**P1**] — [**P6**] in order of their signal strength.

- ❒ To cancel the storage process, touch [**Cancel**].
- ❒ Storing broadcast frequencies with "**BSM**" may replace broadcast frequencies you have saved using [**P1**] — [**P6**]. ■

Tuning in strong signals

Local seek tuning lets you tune in only those radio stations with sufficiently strong signals for good reception.

1 Touch [Local].

2 Touch [On] to turn local seek tuning on.

- ❒ To turn local seek tuning off, touch [**Off**].

3 Touch [◄] or [►] to set the sensitivity.

There are four levels of sensitivity for FM.
Level: **1** — **2** — **3** — **4**
The level "**4**" setting allows reception of only the strongest stations, while lower settings let you receive weaker stations. ■

Using radio text

This tuner can display radio text data transmitted by RDS stations, such as station information, the name of the currently broadcast song and the name of the artist.

- ❒ The tuner automatically memorises the three latest radio text broadcasts received, replacing text from the least recent reception with new text when it is received.

Displaying radio text

You can display the currently received radio text and the three most recent radio text.

1 Touch [T] to display radio text.

Radio text for the currently broadcasting station is displayed.

- ❒ When no radio text is received, "**No Text**" is displayed.

2 Touch [▼] or [▲].

Touching the keys switches the text contents from the current radio text to the most recent three radio text.

- ❒ If there is no radio text data in memory the display will not change.
- ❒ If you touch [**Current Radio Text**], the screen returns to the current radio text.

Storing and recalling radio text

You can store data from up to six radio text transmissions in the touch panel keys **1** — **6**.

1 Display the radio text you want to store in memory.

➲ For details, refer to *Displaying radio text* on this page

2 Press and hold any of the keys 1 — 6 to store the displayed radio text.

The selected radio text is stored in memory. The next time you press the same keys **1** — **6** in the radio text display, the stored text is recalled from memory.

❒ If the radio text data already stored under memory **1** — **6**, the radio text memorised afterward will overwrite the existing one.

Searching for an RDS station by PTY information

You can search for general types of broadcasting programmes.

➲ For details, refer to *PTY list* on page 97

1 Touch [PTY].

2 Touch or to select a desired programme type.

There are four programme types:
[**News&Inf**] — [**Popular**] — [**Classic**] — [**Others**]

3 Touch [Search] to begin the search.

The tuner searches for a station broadcasting that programme type.

To cancel the search, touch [**Stop**].

❒ The programme of some stations may differ from that indicated by the transmitted PTY.

❒ If no station is broadcasting the type of programme you searched for, [**Not Found**] is displayed and then the tuner returns to the original station.

Receiving traffic announcements

TA (traffic announcement standby) lets you receive traffic announcements automatically, no matter what source you are listening to. **TA** can be activated for both a TP station (a station that broadcasts traffic information) or another enhanced network's TP station (a station carrying information that cross-references TP stations).

1 Tune in a TP or another enhanced network's TP station.

When you are tuned in to a TP or another enhanced network's TP station the indicator will light.

2 Press TA/NEWS button to turn traffic announcement standby on.

TRFC appears in the display. The tuner will standby for traffic announcements. If you turned the TA function on while tuned in to neither a TP nor another enhanced network's TP station, the TRFC indicator lights.

❒ To turn traffic announcements standby off, press **TA/NEWS** button again.

❒ You can also turn on or off **TA** function by touching [**TA**] on the screen.

3 Use VOL (▼/▲) button to adjust the TA volume when a traffic announcement begins.

The newly set volume is stored in memory and recalled for subsequent traffic announcements.

4 Press TA/NEWS button while a traffic announcement is being received to cancel the announcement.

The tuner returns to the original source but remains in standby mode until turning the traffic announcement standby off.

❒ You can also cancel the announcement by pressing **TRK** (◄/►) button or **P.LIST** (▲/▼) button while a traffic announcement is being received.

❒ The system switches back to the original source following traffic announcement reception.

❒ Only TP and other enhanced network's TP stations are tuned in during seek tuning or BSM when TA is on.

Using news programme interruption

When a news programme is broadcast from a PTY code news station, the navigation system can switch from any station to the news broadcast station. When the news programme ends, reception of the previous programme resumes.

❒ You can also cancel the news programme by pressing **TRK** (◄/►) button or **P.LIST** (▲/▼) button while a news programme is being received.

1 Press and hold TA/NEWS button to turn on news programme interruption.

Press **TA/NEWS** button until News or appears in the display.

2 Press TA/NEWS button during a news programme interruption to cancel the news programme.

❒ To turn off news programme interruption, press and hold **TA/NEWS** button again.

The tuner returns to the original source but remains in standby mode until the news programme interruption is turned off.

❒ You can also turn on or off NEWS function by touching [**News**] on the screen.

About interruption icon status (e.g. TRFC icon)

The indication of the status icon changes according to the situation as shown below.

Indicator	Implication
TRFC	Information interruption is ON, but you will not receive data since there is none.
	Even if the information interruption is turned OFF, data is still received. (You can receive when information interruption is turned ON.)
TRFC	The information interruption is turned ON, and currently receiving data.
(No display)	Information interruption is turned OFF, and no data is being received.

Receiving PTY alarm broadcasts

PTY alarm is a special PTY code for announcements regarding emergencies such as natural disasters. When the tuner receives the radio alarm code, "**Alarm**" appears on the screen and the volume adjusts to the TA volume. When the station stops broadcasting the emergency announcement, the system returns to the previous source.

❒ An emergency announcement can be cancelled by pressing **TA/NEWS** button.

❒ You can also cancel an emergency announcement by pressing **TRK** (◄/►) button or **P.LIST** (▲/▼) button.

Selecting alternative frequencies (AF)

If you are listening to a broadcast and the reception becomes weak or there are other problems, the navigation system will automatically search for a different station in the same network which is broadcasting a stronger signal.

❒ AF is on as a default.

● **Touch** AF On **(or** AF Off**).**

Touching the key switches the status between on and off.

❒ Only RDS stations are tuned in during seek tuning or BSM when AF is on.

❒ When you recall a preset station, the tuner may update the preset station with a new frequency from the station's AF list. (This is only available when using presets on the FM1 or FM2 bands.) No preset number appears on the display if the RDS data for the station received differs from that for the originally stored station.
❒ Sound may be temporarily interrupted by another programme during an AF frequency search.
❒ AF can be turned on or off independently for each FM band.

Using PI Seek

If the navigation system fails to find a suitable alternative frequency, or if you are listening to a broadcast and the reception becomes weak, the navigation system will automatically search for a different station with the same programming. During the search, "**PI Seek**" is displayed and the output for audio source is muted. The muting is discontinued after completion of the PI Seek, whether or not a different station is found.

Using Auto PI Seek for preset stations

When preset stations cannot be recalled, as when travelling long distances, the navigation system can be set to perform PI Seek during preset recall.

❒ The default setting for Auto PI Seek is off.

➲ For details, refer to *Switching* **Auto PI** *seek* on page 134

Limiting stations to regional programming

When AF is used to automatically retune frequencies, the regional function limits the selection to stations broadcasting regional programmes.

● **Touch Regional On (or Regional Off).**

Touching the key switches the status between on and off.

❒ Regional programming and regional networks are organised differently depending on the country (i.e., they may change according to the time, country or broadcast area).
❒ The preset number may disappear on the display if the tuner tunes in a regional station which differs from the originally set station.
❒ The regional function can be turned on or off independently for each FM band.

PTY list

General	Specific	Type of programme
News&Inf	**News**	News
	Affairs	Current affairs
	Info	General information and advice
	Sport	Sports
	Weather	Weather reports/meteorological information
	Finance	Stock market reports, commerce, trading, etc.
Popular	**Pop Mus**	Popular music
	Rock Mus	Contemporary modern music
	Easy Mus	Easy listening music
	Oth Mus	Non categorised music
	Jazz	Jazz
	Country	Country music
	Nat Mus	National music
	Oldies	Oldies music, golden oldies
	Folk Mus	Folk music
Classic	**L. Class**	Light classical music
	Classic	Serious classical music
Others	**Educate**	Educational programmes
	Drama	All radio plays and serials
	Culture	National or regional culture
	Science	Nature, science and technology
	Varied	Light entertainment
	Children	Children's
	Social	Social affairs
	Religion	Religion affairs or services
	Phone In	Phone In
	Touring	Travel programmes, not for announcements about traffic problems
	Leisure	Hobbies and recreational activities
	Document	Documentaries

▣

Operating the Radio (AM)

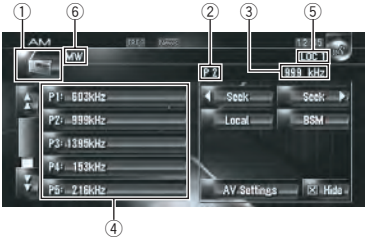
You can listen to the radio by using the navigation system. This section describes operations for Radio (AM).

Selecting [AM] as the source

- **Touch the source icon and touch [AM].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **Preset number indicator**
Shows what preset has been selected.

③ **Frequency indicator**
Shows to which frequency the tuner is tuned.

④ **Preset list display**
Shows the preset list.

⑤ **LOCAL indicator**
Shows when local seek tuning is on.

⑥ **LW/MW indicator**
Shows whether the tuner is tuned for the LW or MW.

Touch panel key operation

- **Touch the source icon and then touch [AM] to select the radio (AM).**

When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys

① **Touch: Recall the preset station**
Touch and hold: Store the broadcast station
You can register the frequency currently being received to the preset list. You can easily store up to six broadcast frequencies for later recall with the touch of a key.
❒ Up to 6 stations can be stored in memory.

② **Touch: Perform manual tuning**
To perform manual tuning, touch Seek or Seek briefly. The frequencies move up or down one step.
Touch and hold: Perform seek tuning
To perform seek tuning, keep touching Seek or Seek for about one second and release. The tuner will scan the frequencies until a broadcast strong enough for good reception is found.
❒ You can cancel seek tuning by touching either Seek or Seek briefly.
❒ If you keep touching Seek or Seek, you can skip broadcasting frequencies. Seek tuning starts as soon as you release the keys.
❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.

③ **Tune in strong signals**
➲ For details, refer to *Tuning in strong signals* on page 93

④ **Store the strongest broadcast frequencies**
➲ For details, refer to *Storing the strongest broadcast frequencies* on the next page

Storing the strongest broadcast frequencies

"**BSM**" (best stations memory) lets you automatically store the six strongest broadcast frequencies under preset tuning keys **P1** — **P6** and once stored there you can tune in to those frequencies with the touch of a key.

- **Touch and hold [BSM].**

"**BSM**" starts. The six strongest broadcast frequencies will be stored under preset tuning keys **P1** — **P6** in order of their signal strength.

- ❒ To cancel the storage process, touch [**Cancel**].
- ❒ Storing broadcast frequencies with **BSM** may replace broadcast frequencies you have saved using **P1** — **P6**.

Tuning in strong signals

Local seek tuning lets you tune in only those radio stations with sufficiently strong signals for good reception.

1 Touch [Local].

2 Touch [On] to turn local seek tuning on.

- ❒ To turn local seek tuning off, touch [**Off**].

3 Touch ◄ or ► to set the sensitivity.

There are two levels of sensitivity for AM.
Level: **1** — **2**
The level "**2**" setting allows reception of only the strongest stations, while lower settings let you receive weaker stations. ▣

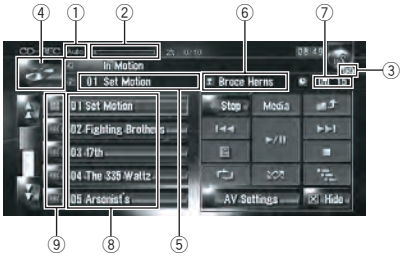
You can record tracks from a music CD to the hard disk in the navigation system. The music library function enables you to record music CDs on the hard disk in the navigation system and play them back with various methods. To use the music library, start by recording sound sources from the CD.

Music Library Recording

When you play back a music CD that is not recorded on the navigation system, the system automatically begins recording that CD to the music library. This section describes cautions and recording procedure.

❒ The music library can record up to 200 general music CDs worth of music data. (This is just an average number and varies depending on the size of music data contained in the CDs.)

Screen configuration



"100%" appears to indicate that the recording has completed. You can touch [**Stop**] to switch the screen and perform another operation.

① **Recording mode indicator**
Shows the current recording mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the CD recording mode* on page 133

② **Recording progress indicator**
Shows the progress of the recording. Fractions show number of recorded tracks total number of tracks in the CD.

③ **Recording indicator**
Shows the recording status. (Red) indicates that recording is in progress. (Blue) indicates preparing recording.

④ **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

⑤ **Track indicator**
Shows the number and title of the track currently playing.

⑥ **Artist name indicator**
Shows the name of the artist currently playing. (when available.)

⑦ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current track.

⑧ **Track list**
Shows tracks in the CD.

⑨ **Record status of tracks**
: Recorded track
(Red): Track being recorded
(Blue): Track is not recorded yet

❒ Track selection operation or special playback functions such as random play are disabled until recording finishes. To select tracks or perform special playback functions, touch [**Stop**] to stop recording.

Title display

Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

❒ Title information will be displayed when the information is found in the Gracenote® Database on the built-in hard disk drive. If you insert a CD-TEXT disc, the system prioritised a title information encoded in CD-TEXT disc.

❒ If Cyrillic letters are used in the CD-TEXT information, the information cannot be displayed correctly.

❒ When multiple options for the title information are found or no title information exists, [-] is displayed. A title may be displayed if you update the title information manually after recording has finished.

➲ For details, refer to *Assigning another candidate for title information* on page 113

❒ If no title information exists in the Gracenote® Database on the built-in hard disk drive, the date when the track was recorded is entered automatically. If you want to display the title information, enter the title manually after recording has finished.
➲ For more details about "Changing the title of the playlist or track", refer to *Editing a playlist or tracks* on page 107

❒ The title information displayed on the CD playback screen and the recording screen is synchronised with the one edited in the music library. If you edit the title information in the music library, the title displayed on each screen will change accordingly.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing a playlist or tracks* on page 107

❒ Title information can only be edited when one or more tracks are recorded in the music library.

❒ Once you record a CD-TEXT disc, the title information encoded in CD-TEXT disc is also stored into the hard disk drive. (If you edit the title information with the Music library, the edited title will be shown.)

Recording all tracks in a CD

When you play back a CD that is not recorded, it is automatically recorded in the music library (hard disk drive).

❒ All tracks are automatically recorded (**Auto**) in the default setting.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the CD recording mode* on page 133

● **Insert the CD that you want to record.**

Recording automatically starts.

❒ To cancel the recording, touch [**Stop**].

When recording finishes, the system returns to the normal playback screen of the CD in the blank between current track and next track.

❒ If the CD is scratched or damaged, no data can be recorded on that part. In such a case, the track that falls on that part may be skipped.

Recording a CD manually

You can record only your favourite tracks in the CD.

1 [REC Mode] is set to [Manual].

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the CD recording mode* on page 133

❒ **REC Mode** cannot be changed during recording.

2 Play back the track you want to record.

3 Touch [REC].

The track being played is recorded.

When recording finishes, the system returns to the normal playback screen of the CD in the end of the track.

❒ To cancel the recording, touch [**Stop**].

Recording only the first track of a CD

You can record only the first track of the CD. This mode is useful when you want to record only the first tracks from multiple CD singles (or EPs) consecutively.

1 [REC Mode] is set to [Single].

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the CD recording mode* on page 133

❒ **REC Mode** cannot be changed during recording.

2 Insert the CD you want to record.

Recording automatically starts for the first track.

When recording finishes, the system returns to the normal playback screen of the CD in the end of the track.

❒ To cancel the recording, touch [**Stop**].

Stopping CD recording

You can stop recording while recording a CD. (Recording can resume depending on the recording mode.)

- **Touch [Stop].**

When REC Mode is [Auto] or [Single]:
Recording is paused, and the system starts normal CD playback. To resume recording, touch [**REC**]. Recording also resumes in the following cases:

- When you switch to another source, and then return to the CD source.
- When you turn off the ignition switch of the vehicle, and then restart the engine.

When REC Mode is [Manual]:
Recording is stopped. Touch [**REC**] to record the track being played.

Notes on CD recording

- Operations on the navigation system may take more time during recording than normal.
- Tracks from a CD are recorded in 4 times speed. You can listen to that sound during recording.
- The data is recorded using a highly efficient compression method, so the sound may slightly differ from the original depending on the sound source. Noise may be heard in some cases, but this is not an malfunction.
- Recording is possible only with a CD that contains 44.1 kHz, 16-bit-stereo PCM digital audio data.
- Recording (or copying) to the music library is not possible from recording media (such as CD-Rs) in which a CD or other data is digitally stored. This is due to the Serial Copy Management System (SCMS) that was developed to prevent second-generation or serial copies.
- Recording to the music library is not possible from media (such as CD-Rs) in which MP3 files are stored.
- When you are recording a CD with no track intervals (such as a live concert CD), if the engine stops and the power turns off, the sound may break in a track when the music data is played back.

Also see "*Notes for Hard Disk Drive*" for more cautions about handling hard disk drive.
➲ For details, refer to *Notes for Hard Disk Drive* on page 19

Music Library Play

You can play back or edit the tracks recorded in the hard disk drive in the source named music library (**LIBRARY**).

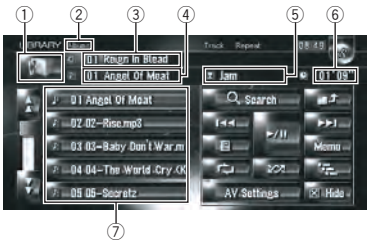
Selecting [LIBRARY] as the source

- **Touch the source icon and touch [LIBRARY].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration

Music Library (LIBRARY)



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.
② **Group name indicator**
Shows the group currently playing.
③ **Playlist name indicator**
Shows the playlist currently playing.
④ **Track indicator**
Shows the number and title of the track currently playing.
⑤ **Artist name indicator**

Shows the name of the artist currently playing. (when available.)

⑥ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current track.

⑦ **Track list and playlist**
Shows the track list or the playlist currently playing or temporary displayed.
The icon on the left indicates that the item is a "Playlist", and the icon indicates that the item is a "Track".

Title display

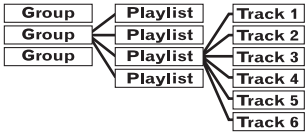
Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

❒ If no title information exists in the Gracenote® Database on the built-in hard disk drive, the date when the track was recorded is entered automatically. If you want to display the title information, enter the title manually after recording has finished.

➲ For details, refer to *Changing the title of the playlist or track* on page 109

Relationship of groups, playlists, and tracks

The music library is organised as follows with three levels: groups, playlists, and tracks.



There are four types of groups:

- **Album group ([Albums]):**
  Stores the recorded track data in its original order. One playlist is automatically created when a CD is recorded.
- **Artist group ([Artists]):**
  Stores playlists in which tracks are sorted by artist names.
- **Genre group ([Genres]):**
  Stores playlists in which tracks are sorted by genres.
- **My Favorite group ([My Favorites]):**
  Stores playlists registered with your favourite selection.
- **Maximum number you can register**

Group	Playlist	Tracks for a playlist
[**Albums**]	400	99
[**Artists**]	400	400
[**Genres**]	13	400
[**My Favorites**]	5	99

If you try to record one playlist more than the number listed above, the oldest playlist will be deleted.

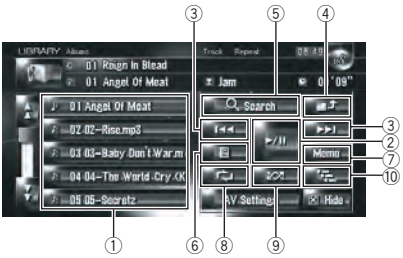
Touch panel key operation

Listening to a track recorded in the Music Library

● **Touch the source icon and then touch [LIBRARY].**

When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys



① **Select a desired track from the list**
Touch a desired track to play.
❒ Touching or switches to the next or previous page in the list.

② **Playback and Pause**
Touching ►/II switches between "playback" and "pause".

③ **Touch: Skip the track forward or backward**

Touching ►►I skips to the start of the next track. Touching I◄◄ once skips to the start of the current track. Touching again will skip to the previous track.

Touch and hold: fast backward or forward

❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.

④ **View upper contents**

Touching displays the contents of the upper playlist or group.

❒ You cannot touch on the group selection screen.

➲ For more details about "Relationship of groups, playlists, and tracks", refer to *Screen configuration* on page 102

⑤ **Display group selection screen**

You can search a track from categories.

➲ For more details about "Search for a playlist", refer to *Searching a track from the playlist* on the next page

⑥ **Display the details information screen**

Displays the information about the track or playlist displayed in blue on the track list. On the details information, you can delete the track or edit the track information.

➲ For details, refer to *Editing a playlist or tracks* on page 107

⑦ **Touch and hold: Register the track in My Mix.**

➲ For details, refer to *Registering a track to "**My Mix**" playlist in one action* on page 106

⑧ **Repeat play**

Each touch of changes the repeat range as follows:

- **Track Repeat** — Repeat just the current track
- **Playlist Repeat** — Repeat just the current playlist
- **No display** — Repeat the currently selected group

❒ Repeat play may stop if you perform an operation that affects a track outside the repeating range during track repeat play.

❒ If you perform random play or scan play during track repeat play, the repeating range changes to **Playlist Repeat**.

⑨ **Play tracks in random order**

The selected tracks in the repeated range are randomly played.

❒ Random play may stop if you perform an operation that affects a track outside the repeating range or perform repeat play or scan play during track repeat play.

❒ When the range of repeat play is **Track Repeat**, if you perform random play, the repeating range changes to **Playlist Repeat**.

Indicator	Implication
[**Random**] only	Tracks of all playlists in the group are played in random order.
[**Playlist Repeat**] and [**Random**]	Tracks in the selected playlist are played in random order.

⑩ **Scan play**

Scan play will be performed for the selected repeat range.

❒ When the range of repeat play is **Track Repeat**, if you perform scan play, the repeating range changes to **Playlist Repeat**.

❒ When you find the desired track, touch to turn scan play off.

❒ After track or playlist scanning is finished, normal playback of the tracks will begin again.

Indicator	Implication
[**Scan**] only	The beginning of the first tracks of each playlist in the group is played for about 10 seconds.
[**Playlist Repeat**] and [**Scan**]	The beginning of each track in the selected playlist is played for about 10 seconds.

Searching a track from the playlist

Once tracks are recorded, the navigation system categorises them in a “Group”, and several types of playlists are automatically created. A playlist is a list that shows the playback order of tracks.

➲ For more details about “Relationship of groups, playlists, and tracks”, refer to *Screen configuration* on page 102

Searching for an album

Select a playlist formed by an album, and play it back.

1 Touch [Search].

The group selection screen appears.

2 Touch [Albums].

3 Touch the album name (“Album” playlist) you want to play back.

The first track in the selected playlist is played back.

Searching the playlist by artist

Select a playlist formed by an artist, and play it back.

1 Touch [Search].

The group selection screen appears.

2 Touch [Artists].

“**Artist**” playlist appears.

3 Touch the artist name (“Artist” playlist) you want to play back.

The first track in the selected playlist is played back.

Search a playlist by genre

Select a playlist formed by a genre, and play it back.

❒ Only the genre of a recorded track is displayed in a genre playlist.

1 Touch [Search].

The group selection screen appears.

2 Touch [Genres].

“**Genre**” playlist appears.

3 Touch the genre (“Genre” playlist) you want to play back.

The first track in the selected playlist is played back.

Creating a playlist with a customised order

You can register your favourite tracks as a playlist, and play them back in desired order. [**My Favorites**] group has two types of playlists.

"My Mix" playlist:
You can register the track being played in one action.
"My Favorite 1-4" playlist:
You can register tracks from the detailed screen information.

Registering a track to "My Mix" playlist in one action

You can register the track being played to the favourite playlist called "**My Mix**".

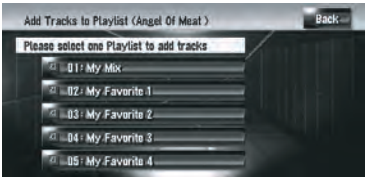
- **Touch and hold [Memo] while playing back the track you want to register.**
The track being played is registered in "**My Mix**" playlist.

Register tracks one by one

1 Play back the track you want to register.

2 Touch , then touch [Add to My Favorites].

3 Touch the playlist ([My Favorite 1] to [My Favorite 4] or [My Mix]) in which you want to register the track.


Add Tracks to Playlist (Angel Of Meat)
Back
Please select one Playlist to add tracks
01 : My Mix
02 : My Favorite 1
03 : My Favorite 2
04 : My Favorite 3
05 : My Favorite 4

4 Touch [Yes].
The track is registered in the selected My Favourite playlist.

Registering multiple tracks at a time

1 Play back the playlist that contains the tracks you want to register.

2 Touch to display the list of playlists.

3 Touch , then touch [Add to My Favorites].
The item displayed in blue is the selected playlist.

4 Touch the playlist ([My Favorite 1] to [My Favorite 4] or [My Mix]) in which you want to register the tracks.

5 Touch the tracks you want to register.
When you touch a track, a tick mark appears indicating that it is selected. To deselect it, touch the track again.
Touch ► to proceed to the next operation.

Add Tracks to Playlists(Reign In Blead)
ESC
Back
Please select the tracks to add Max 99
01 : Angel Of Meat
02 : Altar-By-Piece
03 : Necrophobic Saves
04 : Piece Of Sacrifice
05 : Jesus Jesus

Select All:
Selects all tracks in the playlist.
All Off:
Cancels selection of all tracks in the playlist.

6 Touch [Back].

7 Touch [Yes].
The tracks are registered in the selected "**My Favorite**" playlist.

❒ Up to 99 tracks can be registered in one "**My Favorite**" playlist.

Editing a playlist or tracks

You can edit the tracks or playlist recorded in the Music library.
Only the playlists and tracks in [**Albums**] group and [**My Favorites**] group can be edited. In [**Artist**] group, only the pronunciation of the artist playlist can be edited.

Switching to the edit mode

1 Touch the playlist in [Albums], [My Favorites], or [Artists].

2 Touch the track you want to edit.
The item displayed in blue is the track currently playing.

3 Touch .
The system enters the track edit mode.

➲ For details, refer to *Operating the track edit mode* on the next page

4 Touch [Back] to return the previous screen.

5 Touch to return to the previous level.

The item displayed in blue is the selected playlist.

6 Touch .
The system enters the playlist edit mode.

❒ To return to the previous screen, touch [**Back**].

Operating the playlist edit mode

"Album" playlist:

All editing operations are possible. The edited contents will be reflected to all groups in the hard disk drive.

"My Mix" playlist, "My Favorite" playlist:
Only ④, ⑥, and ⑧ can be performed.

① **Enter a desired playlist title**
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the title of the playlist or track* on the next page

② **Edit the pronunciation that is used as a voice command for voice recognition**
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the pronunciation of a playlist name or track name* on page 110

③ **Enter a desired artist name**
➲ For details, refer to *Renaming an artist name in the playlist or track* on page 110

④ **Sort playback order of the playlists**
➲ For details, refer to *Sorting the playlists* on page 111

⑤ **Delete the playlist**
➲ For details, refer to *Deleting a playlist* on page 111

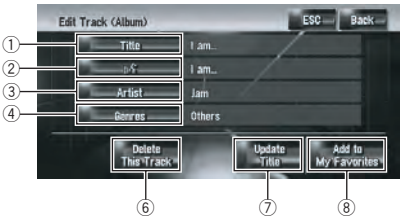
⑥ **Delete the selected tracks from that playlist**
➲ For details, refer to *Deleting a track from the playlist* on page 112

⑦ **Update title information**
➲ For details, refer to *Assigning another candidate for title information* on page 113

⑧ **Add the selected tracks to "My Favorite"**
➲ For details, refer to *Registering multiple tracks at a time* on page 106

Operating the track edit mode

"Album" playlist:
All items can be edited except for ⑤. The edited contents will be reflected to all groups in the hard disk drive.



"My Mix" playlist, "My Favorite" playlist:
Only ⑤, ⑥, ⑧ can be performed.

① **Enter a desired track title**
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the title of the playlist or track* on the next page

② **Edit the pronunciation that is used as a voice command for voice recognition**
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the pronunciation of a playlist name or track name* on page 110

③ **Enter a desired artist name**
➲ For details, refer to *Renaming an artist name in the playlist or track* on page 110

④ **Change genre**
➲ For details, refer to *Changing the genre of a track* on page 112

⑤ **Change the order to play back tracks**
➲ For details, refer to *Sorting the tracks in "***My Mix***" ("***My Favorite***") playlist* on page 111

⑥ **Delete the current track**
➲ For details, refer to *Deleting the current track* on page 112
⑦ **Update track title information**
➲ For details, refer to *Assigning another candidate for title information* on page 113
⑧ **Add the track to "My Favorite"**
➲ For details, refer to *Register tracks one by one* on page 106

Changing the title of the playlist or track

Entering letters in Cyrillic (With [Cyrillic] selected in [Keyboard] settings under [Regional Settings])

You can change titles of playlists or tracks. The titles changed here are displayed on the screen.

❒ When entering letters in Cyrillic, title change and voice command cannot be registered at the same time. To register voice command, touch [redacted] after title change is complete and edit the settings.

1 Enter the playlist edit mode or track edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Title].
When the message "**The character set is different from current keyboard setting. All characters will be deleted when editing. Would you like to proceed?**" appears, touch [**Yes**]. Touch [**No**] to cancel the operation.

3 Enter a new name, then touch [OK].
The current title appears in the text box.
Delete the current title, and enter a new title.
❒ Touch [**Small**] to enter lowercase letters. Touch [**Caps.**] to enter uppercase letters. Touch to toggle the selection.

Changing the title of the playlist or track

Entering letters other than Cyrillic (With an item other than [Cyrillic] selected in [Keyboard] settings under [Regional Settings])

You can change titles of playlists or tracks. The titles changed here are displayed on the screen.

1 Enter the playlist edit mode or track edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Editing a playlist or tracks* on page 107

2 Touch [Title].
When the message "**The character set is different from current keyboard setting. All characters will be deleted when editing. Would you like to proceed?**" appears, touch [**Yes**]. Touch [**No**] to cancel the operation.

3 Touch [Yes].
When not registering a title as a voice command, select [**No**].

4 Enter a new character string, and then touch [OK].
The current title appears in the text box.
Delete the current title, and enter a new title.
❒ Touch [**Small**] to enter lowercase letters. Touch [**Caps.**] to enter uppercase letters. Touch to toggle the selection.
❒ When not registering the entered title as a voice command, Step 4 completes the operation.

The system pronounces the character string once, and the pronunciation confirmation message appears.
Touch [**Yes**] to fix the change.
[**No**]:
Returns to the detailed information screen.
[**Repeat**]:
You can listen to the pronunciation again.

- ❒ If the pronunciation is not the desired one, edit the characters so that the pronunciation matches your desired pronunciation.

5 Touch [Yes].
The changed character string is fixed and the system returns to the previous screen.

Changing the pronunciation of a playlist name or track name

You can change the pronunciation of a playlist or track name. The pronunciation is used as a command for voice recognition.

- ❒ Only the Latin letters (A –Z, a - z) can be used for voice command.
- ❒ Only pronunciation can be edited for "**Artist**" playlist.
- ❒ The navigation system recognises only the voice recognition characters registered in the current language. If you change the interface language, the voice recognition character registered before you change the language will not be recognised.

1 Enter the playlist edit mode or track edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch .

3 Enter a new character string, and then touch [OK].
The system pronounces the character once, and the pronunciation confirmation message appears. Touch [**Yes**] to fix the change.
[**No**]:
Returns to the detailed information screen.
[**Repeat**]:
You can listen to the pronunciation again.

- ❒ If the pronunciation is not the desired one, edit the characters so that the pronunciation matches your desired pronunciation.

4 Touch [Yes].
The changed character is fixed and the system returns to the previous screen.

Renaming an artist name in the playlist or track

You can rename the artist name in the playlist or track.

1 Enter the playlist edit mode or track edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Artist].

3 Touch [Select from history List].
[**Keyboard Input**]:
The character input screen appears, and you can change the artist name with the keyboard.
When the message "**The character set is different from current keyboard setting. All characters will be deleted when editing. Would you like to proceed?**" appears, touch [**Yes**]. Touch [**No**] to cancel the operation.

4 Select an artist name from the list.
The artist name is changed to the one you selected. In the playlist edit mode, touching [**Yes**] changes the artist name to the one you selected.

Sorting the playlists

The playback order of playlists in the group can be changed.

❒ If there is only one playlist, the playback order cannot be changed.

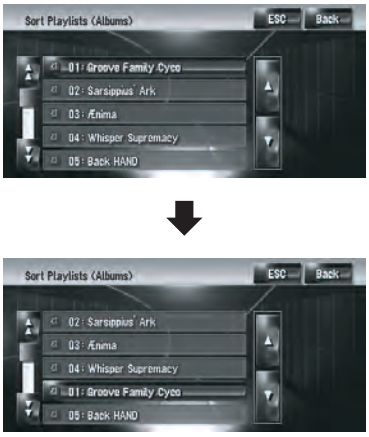
1 Enter the playlist edit mode.

➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Sort Playlists].

3 Touch the playlist that you want to change the order for.

4 Touch , , , or to determine the position you want to put.



:
Moves playlists by page.
:
Moves playlists one by one.

5 Touch the selected playlist again.

The position of that playlist is fixed.

6 Repeat Step 3 to Step 5 to change the playback order of other playlists.

7 Touch [ESC].

The new order is fixed, and the system returns to the normal playback screen.

Sorting the tracks in "My Mix" ("My Favorite") playlist

The playback order of tracks in "**My Mix**" playlist and "**My Favorite**" playlist can be changed.

1 Enter the track edit mode.

➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Sort Tracklists].

3 Touch the track that you want to change.

4 Touch , , , or to determine the position you want to put.

5 Touch the selected track again.

The destination is fixed.

6 Repeat Step 3 to Step 5 to change the playback order of other tracks.

7 Touch [ESC].

The new order is fixed, and the system returns to the normal playback screen.

Deleting a playlist

You can delete a playlist in [**Albums**] group. (You cannot delete playlists in other groups.)

❒ If you delete a playlist in [**Albums**] group, all tracks in the playlist are deleted from the hard disk drive. (They are deleted from [**My Favorites**] group at the same time.)

❒ If you delete the playlist, the system does not delete the edited title information, such as album title, artist name, or track name.

1 Enter the playlist edit mode.

➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Delete This Playlist].

3 Touch [Yes].
The playlist is deleted.

Deleting a track from the playlist

You can delete tracks from the playlist.
- ❒ If you delete a track in [**Albums**] group, the track is deleted from the hard disk drive. (It is deleted from [**My Favorites**] group at the same time.)
- ❒ If you delete the track, the system does not delete the edited title information.
- ❒ If you delete the tracks in "**My Mix**" playlist or "**My Favorite**" playlist, they are only deleted from the playlist, and not from the hard disk drive.

1 Enter the playlist edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Delete Tracks].

3 Touch the tracks you want to delete.
When you touch a track, a tick mark appears indicating that it is selected. To deselect it, touch the track again.

Touch ► to proceed to the next operation.
[**Select All**]:
Selects all tracks in the playlist.
[**All Off**]:
Cancels the selection of all tracks in the playlist.

4 Touch [Back].

5 Touch [Yes].

Deleting the current track

- ❒ If you delete the track, the track is deleted from the hard disk drive. (It is deleted from [**My Favorites**] group at the same time.)
- ❒ If you delete the track, the system does not delete the edited title information.
- ❒ If you delete the tracks in "**My Mix**" playlist or "**My Favorite**" playlist, they are only deleted from the playlist, and not from the hard disk drive.

1 Enter the track edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Delete This Track].

3 Touch [Yes].

Changing the genre of a track

1 Enter the track edit mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Genres].

3 Select the desired genre from the list.

The genre is changed, and the system returns to the previous screen.

Assigning another candidate for title information

If the current title information is not desired title, you can search for another title information from Gracenote® Database in the hard disk drive manually and assign another candidate. If there were multiple options for the title information, you can select one title from them.

- Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.
- Once you update the title information, the information you edit before will be overwritten by the title information of the Gracenote® Database.

Gracenote® Database updates are available. You can download the latest update from Pioneer website by using your PC. To install the update, burn the data onto a CD-R(-RW) and insert it into your navigation system. When you download the files and install the update, follow the instructions in the website.

1 Select the playlist in [Albums] group, and enter the playlist edit mode or track edit mode.

➲ For details, refer to *Switching to the edit mode* on page 107

2 Touch [Update Title].

Information search begins. When the title information is obtained, the candidates screen appears.

3 Select the desired album title from the list.

The title information is updated to the one you selected. ■

When Pioneer audio equipment is connected to the navigation system using IP-BUS or AV-BUS, such equipment can be operated from the navigation system. This chapter describes the operation of the audio source that can be used when the Pioneer audio equipment is connected. When reading this chapter, please also refer to the operation manual of the AV equipment connected to the navigation system.

Operating the Multi-CD Player

You can use the navigation system to control a multi-CD player, which is sold separately.

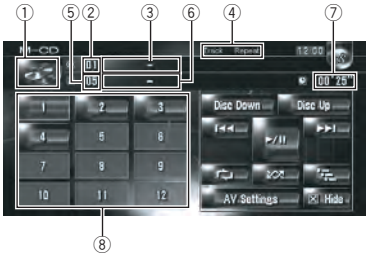
❒ Only those functions described in this manual are available for multi-CD player. (Depending on the multi-CD player, the function may be invalid.)

Selecting [M-CD] as the source

● **Touch the source icon and touch [M-CD].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration



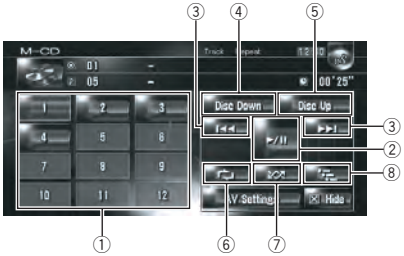
① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.
② **Disc number indicator**
Shows the disc currently playing.
③ **Disc title indicator***
Shows the title of the disc currently playing.
④ **Playback method indicator**
Shows which repeat range has been selected.
⑤ **Track number indicator**
Shows the track currently playing.
⑥ **Track title indicator***
Shows the title of the track currently playing.
⑦ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current track.
⑧ **Disc number display**
Shows the number of the disc in the multi-CD player.

❒ The titles of the items marked with an asterisk (*) will be displayed only when the CD-TEXT disc is used. When using a normal music CD, they are displayed as [-].
❒ If Cyrillic letters are used in the CD-TEXT information, the information cannot be displayed correctly.

Touch panel key operation

● **Touch the source icon and then touch [M-CD] to select the multi-CD player.**
When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys



❒ When the multi-CD player has performed the preparatory operations, **Ready** is displayed.
❒ If the multi-CD player does not operate properly, an error message such as **Error-XX** may be displayed. Refer to the multi-CD player owner's manual.
❒ If there are no discs in the multi-CD player magazine, **No Disc** is displayed.

① **Change the disc in the magazine**

② **Playback and Pause**
Touching ►/II switches between "playback" and "pause".

③ **Touch: Skip forward or backward**
Touching ►►I skips to the start of the next track. Touching I◄◄ once skips to the start of the current track. Touching again will skip to the previous track.
Touch and hold: fast backward or forward
Keep touching I◄◄ or ►►I to perform fast backward or forward.
❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.

④ **Play back the previous disc**
The disc before the currently played disc will be played.

⑤ **Play back the next disc**
The disc after the currently played disc will be played.

⑥ **Repeat play**
Each touch of changes the settings as follows:
Track Repeat — Repeat just the current track
Disc Repeat — Repeat the current disc
❒ If you select other discs during repeat play, the repeat play range setting will be cancelled.
❒ If you perform track search or fast forward/rewind during **Track Repeat**, the repeat play range changes to **Disc Repeat**.

⑦ **Play tracks in random order**
Tracks will play in a random order within the previously selected repeat ranges.

Indicator	Implication
[**Random**] only	Tracks of all disc in the magazine are played in random order.
[**Disc Repeat**] and [**Random**]	Tracks in the selected disc are played in random order.

❒ If you perform random play during [**Track Repeat**], the repeat play range range changes to [**Disc Repeat**].

⑧ **Scan play**
The first 10 seconds of each track of the current disc (or the first track of each disc) are played.

Indicator	Implication
[**Scan**] only	The beginning of the first tracks of each disc is played for about 10 seconds.
[**Disc Repeat**] and [**Scan**]	The beginning of each track in the selected disc is played for about 10 seconds.

❒ When you find the desired track (or disc) touch to turn scan play off.
❒ After track or disc scanning is finished, normal playback of the tracks will begin again. ■

Operating the iPod®

You can control an iPod by combining the Pioneer Interface adapter for iPod (sold separately) to the navigation system. For details concerning operation, refer to the owner's manual of the Interface adapter for iPod. This section provides information on iPod operations with the navigation system that differ from those described in the owner's manual of Interface adapter for iPod.

❒ When you use the iPod (sold separately) with this Navigation System, Pioneer Interface adapter for iPod is required.
iPod is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

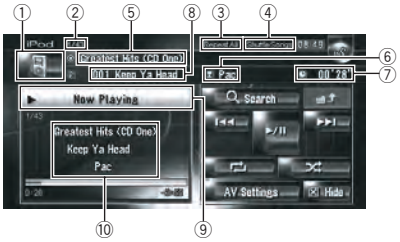
Selecting [iPod] as the source

- **Touch the source icon and touch [iPod].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration

❒ If Cyrillic letters are used in the title information, the information cannot be displayed correctly.



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **Song number indicator**
Shows the number of the song playing in the selected list.

③ **Repeat play indicator**
Shows whether Repeat is selected for the current song or all songs on current list.

④ **Shuffle play indicator**
Shows whether Shuffle play is selected for songs of albums.

⑤ **Album title indicator**
Shows the title of the album for the song.

⑥ **Artist name indicator**
Shows the name of the artist of the current song.

⑦ **Play time indicator**
Shows the elapsed playing time of the current song.

⑧ **Song title indicator**
Shows the title of the current song.

⑨ **Playing Song Information**
Shows the information and status of the current song.

⑩ **Song title, Artist name, and Album title indicator**
When playing a song, Song title, Artist name, and Album title are displayed.

Touch panel key operation

● **Touch the source icon and then touch [iPod] to select the iPod.**

When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys

① **Playback and Pause**
Touching ►/❚❚ switches between “playback” and “pause”.

② **Touch: Skip back or forward to another song**
Touching ►►I skips to the start of the next song. Touching I◄◄ once skips to the start of the current song. Touching again will skip to the previous song.

Touch and hold: fast forward or rewind

❒ You can also perform these operation with pressing **TRK** (◄/►) button.

③ **Display the previous screen**
Touch on the refine search or other screen to return to the previous screen.

④ **Narrow down the songs to play back**
You can narrow down the choices of songs to play from five categories.
➲ For details, refer to *Browsing for a song* on the next page

⑤ **Repeat play**
Touch repeatedly until the desired repeat range appears in the display.
- **Repeat One** — Repeat just the current song
- **Repeat All** — Repeat all songs in the selected list

⑥ **Shuffle play**
This function shuffles songs or albums and plays them in random order.

Each touch of changes the settings as follows:

- **Shuffle Songs** — Play back songs in random order within the selected list
- **Shuffle Albums** — Select an album randomly, and then play back all songs in that album in order

Browsing for a song

The operations for controlling an iPod with this navigation system are designed to be close to iPod operation. This allows you to search and play songs as you would with an iPod.

1 Touch [Search].

If you do nothing about 30 seconds after Steps 1 to 4 are finished, the screen returns to the previous screen.

2 Touch one of the categories in which you want to search for a song.

- **Playlists** (playlists)
- **Artists** (artists)
- **Albums** (albums)
- **Songs** (songs)
- **Genres** (genres)

The search screen is displayed.

The icon on the left indicates that the item is a “Playlist”, and the icon indicates that the item is a “Song”.

- ❒ If you select [**Songs**], proceed to step 4.
- ❒ When you select [**Artists**], [**Albums**] or [**Genres**], you can start a playback of all songs in the selected list. To do this, keep touching the list title.

3 Touch the title of the list that you want to play.

Repeat this operation until you find the desired song.

- ❒ To return to the previous screen touch .

4 From the song list, touch the song you want to play.

- ❒ To go to the next page of the list, touch .
- ❒ To return to the previous page of the list, touch .

Operating the TV tuner

CAUTION

For safety reasons, visual images cannot be viewed while your vehicle is in motion. To view visual images, you must stop in a safe place and put on the handbrake before setting your route (For details, refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

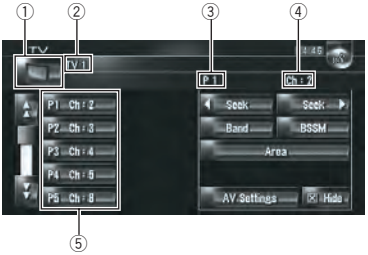
You can use the navigation system to control a TV tuner (e.g. GEX-P6400TVP, GEX-P5700TVP), which is sold separately. For details concerning operation, refer to the TV tuner’s operation manual. This section provides information on TV operations with the navigation system that differ from those described in the TV tuner’s operation manual. When you attempt to watch visual images while driving, the warning **ATTENTION! Viewing of front seat video source while driving is strictly prohibited.** will appear on the screen.

Selecting [TV] as the source

- **Touch the source icon and touch [TV].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **Band indicator**
Shows which band the TV tuner is tuned to: TV 1 or TV 2.

③ **Preset number indicator**
Shows which preset has been selected.

④ **Channel indicator**
Shows which channel the TV tuner is tuned to.

⑤ **Preset list display**
Shows the preset list.

Touch panel key operation

● **Touch the source icon and then touch [TV] to select the TV tuner.**
When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys

① **Select channels from the list**
The list lets you see the list of channels and select one of them to view.

❒ Touching ▲ or ▼ switches to the next or previous page in the list.

❒ You can register your favourite channels in the list.

➲ For details, refer to *Storing and recalling broadcast stations* on this page

② **Touch: Perform manual tuning**
The channels move up or down one step.
Touch and hold: Perform seek tuning
The tuner will scan the channels until a broadcast strong enough for good reception is found.

❒ If you keep touching Seek or Seek you can skip broadcasting channels. Seek tuning starts as soon as you release the keys.

❒ You can also perform these operations by using **TRK** (◄/►) button.

③ **Store the strongest broadcast stations sequentially**
Twelve channels with strong reception sensitivity can be registered automatically in the preset list.

➲ For details, refer to *Storing the strongest broadcast stations sequentially* on the next page

④ **Change band**
Touching [**Band**] switches between "**TV 1**" and "**TV 2**".

⑤ **Select the country group**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting the country group* on the next page

Storing and recalling broadcast stations

If you touch any of the preset tuning keys **P1** — **P12**, you can easily store up to 12 broadcast stations for later recall with a touch of the key.

● **When you find a station that you want to store in memory keep touching a preset tuning key P1 — P12.**

The selected station is stored in memory. The next time you touch the same preset tuning key **P1** — **P12** the station is recalled from memory. To switch between **P1** — **P6** and **P7** — **P12**, touch ▲ or ▼. When the touch panel keys are not displayed, you can display them by touching the screen.

- ❒ Up to 24 stations, 12 for each of two TV bands can be stored in memory.
- ❒ You can also press the **P.LIST** (▲/▼) button to recall stations assigned to preset tuning keys **P1** — **P12**.

Storing the strongest broadcast stations sequentially

● **Touch and hold [BSSM].**

BSSM starts. The 12 strongest broadcast stations will be stored under preset tuning keys **P1** — **P12** in order from the lowest channel up.

- ❒ To cancel the storage process, touch [**Cancel**].
- ❒ Storing broadcast stations with [**BSSM**] may replace current broadcast stations stored in preset memory.

Selecting the country group

1 Touch [Area].

2 Touch [Up] or [Down] to select the appropriate country group.

- ❒ For the details of country code, refer to the "owner's manual" of the TV tuner.■

Operating the AV Input source

CAUTION

For safety reasons, visual images cannot be viewed while your vehicle is in motion. To view visual images, you must stop in a safe place and put on the handbrake before setting your route (For details, refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

Selecting [AV INPUT] as the source

1 [AV Input] is set to [Video].

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the video input* on page 131

2 Touch the source icon and touch [AV INPUT].

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81 ■

Operating the External Unit

The term “external unit” refers to future Pioneer devices that are not currently planned for, or devices that allow control of basic functions although they are not fully controlled by the navigation system. Two external units can be controlled by this navigation system. When two external units are connected, the navigation system allocates them to external unit 1 or external unit 2.

For details concerning operation, refer to the external unit’s operation manual. This section provides information on external unit operations with the navigation system that differ from those described in the external unit’s operation manual.

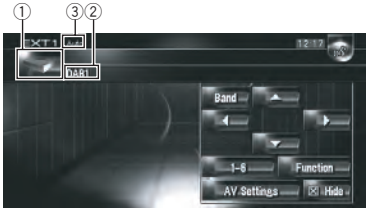
❒ Operation varies depending on the external unit connected. (In some cases, the external unit may not respond.)

Selecting [EXT 1] or [EXT 2] as the source

● **Touch the source icon and touch [EXT 1] or [EXT 2].**

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81

Screen configuration



① **Source icon**
Shows which source has been selected.

② **External unit indicator**
Displays any connected external units.

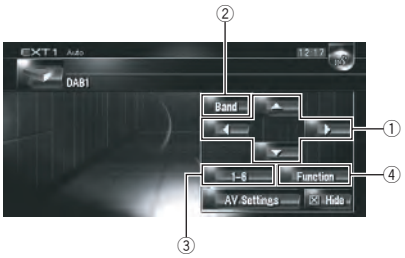
③ **Auto/Manual mode indicator**
Shows the current mode.
➲ For details, refer to *Switching the automatic and manual function* on the next page

Touch panel key operation

● **Touch the source icon and then touch [EXT 1] or [EXT 2] to select the external unit.**

When the source icon is not displayed, you can display it by touching the screen.

Touch panel keys



① **Send an ▲, ▼, ◄, or ► command**

Touch to operate the external unit.
- ❒ Operation varies depending on the external unit connected. (In some cases, some functions may not be used until you touch and hold the key.)

② **Send a band command**
Touch to send a band command to the external unit.
- ❒ Operation varies depending on the external unit connected. (In some cases, the external unit may not respond.)

③ **Send a 1 key to 6 key command**
➲ For details, refer to *Operate the external unit by using* **1** *key* — **6** *key* on this page

④ **Operate the external unit by using Function 1 to Function 4 key and Auto/Manual key**
➲ For details, refer to *Operate the external unit by using* **Function 1** — **Function 4** on this page
➲ For details, refer to *Switching the automatic and manual function* on this page

Operate the external unit by using 1 key — 6 key

The external unit can be operated by transmitting the operating commands set to **1** key — **6** key.

1 Touch [1] — [6].

2 Touch desired key to operate the external unit.

- ❒ To return to the previous screen, touch [**Back**].
- ❒ Operation varies depending on the external unit connected. (In some cases, some functions may not be used until you touch and hold the key.)

Operate the external unit by using Function 1 — Function 4

The external unit can be operated by transmitting the operating commands set to **Function 1** — **Function 4**.
- ❒ The operating commands set to **Function 1** — **Function 4** vary depending on the external unit.

1 Touch [Function].

2 Touch [Function 1, 2, 3 or 4].

The operation command is transmitted to the external unit.
- ❒ Some functions may not be used until you touch and hold the key.
- ❒ To return to the previous screen, touch [**Back**].

Switching the automatic and manual function

You can turn automatic and manual function on or off.
You can switch between **Auto** and **Manual** functions of the external unit connected.
Initially, this function is set to **Auto**.
- ❒ Operating commands set for **Auto** and **Manual** operations vary depending on the external unit connected.

1 Touch [Function].

2 Touch [Auto/Manual].
Touching [**Auto/Manual**] switches between [**Auto**] and [**Manual**].
- ❒ Operation varies depending on the external unit connected. (In some cases, the external unit may not respond.)

❒ To return to the previous screen, touch [**Back**]. ■

Operating the AUX input source (AUX)

An IP-BUS-RCA Interconnector such as CD-RB20/CD-RB10 (sold separately) lets you connect your navigation system to auxiliary equipment featuring RCA output. For more details, refer to the IP-BUS-RCA Interconnector owner's manual.

Selecting [AUX] as the source

1 [AUX Input] is set to [On].

➲ For details, refer to *Switching the auxiliary setting* on page 131

2 Touch the source icon and touch [AUX].

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting a source* on page 81 ■

Various settings are available with the audio source according to your audiovisual needs. This chapter describes the methods of changing the various settings and setting the LCD panel.

AV Setting Overview

The audio visual setting is divided into [**Audio Settings**] and [**System Settings**].

Audio Settings screen

System Settings screen

➲ For more details about "[**Audio Settings**]", refer to this page to page 127.
➲ For more details about "[**System Settings**]", refer to page 127 to page 134.

❒ When **Preout** (the subwoofer controller setting in **System Settings** menu) is **Full**, the **Non Fading** will be displayed instead of **Sub Woofer**.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller* on page 133
When selecting the FM tuner as the source, you cannot select [**Source Level**].

How to Operate the Audio Settings screen

1 Press AV button.
The Navigation screen changes to the Audio source screen (of any source).

2 Touch [AV Settings].
The AV Settings screen appears.

3 Touch the item you want to change.

4 Change Setting.

(E.g. Equaliser screen)

❒ Touch [**ESC**] to return to the selected source screen currently.
❒ Touch [**Back**] to return to the AV Settings screen.

Customising the Audio Settings Items

Using the equaliser

The equaliser lets you adjust the equalisation to match vehicle interior acoustic characteristics as desired.

Recalling equaliser curves

There are six stored equaliser curves which you can easily recall. Here is a list of the equaliser curves:

Equaliser curve
Super Bass **Super Bass** is a curve in which only low-range is boosted.
Powerful (Default) **Powerful** is a curve in which low-range and high-range sounds are boosted.
Natural **Natural** is a curve in which low-range and high-range sounds are slightly boosted.
Vocal **Vocal** is a curve in which the mid-range sounds, such as the human vocal range, are boosted.
Flat **Flat** is a flat curve in which nothing is boosted.
Custom1 **Custom1** is an adjusted equaliser curve that you create. A separate custom curve can be created. **Custom1** and **Custom2** are adjusted equaliser curves that you create. Adjustments can be made with a 3-band parametric equaliser.
Custom2 **Custom2** is an adjusted equaliser curve that you create. If you select this curve, the effect is reflected all audio source.

1 Touch [Equalizer] in Audio Settings menu.

2 Touch desired equaliser.

❒ When [**Flat**] is selected, no supplement or correction is made to the sound. This is useful to check the effect of the equaliser curves by switching alternatively between [**Flat**] and a set equaliser curve.

Adjusting equaliser curves

You can adjust the currently selected equaliser curve setting as desired.

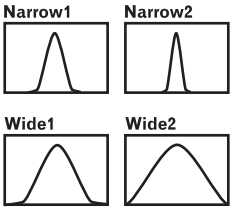
- A separate **Custom1** curve can be created for each source. If you make adjustments when a curve **Super Bass**, **Powerful**, **Natural**, **Vocal**, **Flat**, or **Custom1** is selected, the equaliser curve settings will be memorised in **Custom1**.
- A **Custom2** curve can be created common to all sources. If you make adjustments when **Custom2** curve is selected, the **Custom2** curve will be updated.

❒ The adjusted **Custom1** curve is memorised for each of the source selected, but one curve is shared for the following sources.
- **AM** and **FM**
- **EXT 1** and **EXT 2**
- **AUX** and **AV INPUT**

In the built-in DVD drive, different curves can be memorised for a DVD-Video and a CD (CD-DA or MP3).

You can adjust the centre frequency, level and the Q (curve characteristics) of each band (**Low**/**Mid**/**High**).

- **Band**:
  You can select the band you want to adjust.
- **Frequency**:
  You can select which frequency to be set as the centre frequency.
- **Level**:
  You can adjust the decibel (dB) level of the selected band.
- **Q**:
  You can select the details of the curve characteristics. (The following figure shows the characteristic image.)



1 Touch [Equalizer] in Audio Settings menu.

2 Touch [Customize].
The details setting screen appears.

3 Touch ◄ or ► to select the equaliser band to adjust.
Each time you touch ◄ or ► selects equaliser bands in the following order:
Low — **Mid** — **High**

4 Touch ◄ or ► to select the desired centre frequency.
Low: 40 — **80** — **100** — **160** (Hz)
Mid: 200 — **500** — **1K** — **2K** (Hz)
High: 3.15K — **8K** — **10K** — **12.5K** (Hz)

5 Touch ◄ or ► to adjust the level of the equaliser band.
Each time you touch ◄ or ► increases or decreases the level of the equalisation band.
+12dB to **–12dB** is displayed as the level is increased or decreased.

6 Touch ◄ or ► to select the desired [Q].
Touch ◄ or ► until the desired the curve characteristics appears in the display.
Wide2 — **Wide1** — **Narrow1** — **Narrow2**

❒ To adjust other bands, repeat step 3 to step 6.

Setting the simulated sound stage

You can select the desired effect from various simulated sound stages, such as Music Studio or Dynamic Theatre. You can also adjust a listener positioning effect.

Setting a stage that fits your image

1 Touch [Staging] in Audio Settings menu.

2 Touch desired stage setting.

❒ [**Living Room**] setting that emphasises mid-range sound hardly has any effect near the maximum volume level.

❒ When you set staging to an option other than [**Off**], the high pass filter (**HPF**) setting turns [**Off**].

➲ For details, refer to *Using the high pass filter* on page 127

Adjusting a position effect

You can select a listener position that you want to make as the centre of sound effects.

1 Touch [Staging] in Audio Settings menu.

2 Touch [Position].

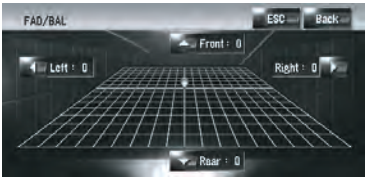
3 Touch desired position.

Using balance adjustment

You can select a fader/balance setting that provides an ideal listening environment in all occupied seats.

1 Touch [FAD/BAL] in Audio Settings menu.
The FAD/BAL screen appears. When **Rear SP** (the subwoofer controller setting in **System Settings** menu) is **Sub.W**, **Balance** will be displayed instead of **FAD/BAL**.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller* on page 133

2 Touch ▲ or ▼ to adjust front/rear speaker balance.
Each time you touch ▲ or ▼ moves the front/rear speaker balance towards the front or the rear.



Front: 15 to **Rear: 15** is displayed as the front/rear speaker balance moves from front to rear. When the rear output setting is **Rear SP Sub.W**, you cannot adjust front/rear speaker balance.
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller* on page 133

3 Touch ◄ or ► to adjust left/right speaker balance.
Each time you touch ◄ or ► moves the left/right speaker balance towards the left or the right.
Left: 9 to **Right: 9** is displayed as the left/right speaker balance moves from left to right.

Using subwoofer output

This navigation system is equipped with a subwoofer output which can be turned on or off.
❒ When the subwoofer output is on, you can adjust the cut-off frequency, the output level, and the phase of the subwoofer.

1 Touch [Sub Woofer] in Audio Settings menu.
When **Preout** (the subwoofer controller setting in **System Settings** menu) is **Full**, you cannot select [**Sub Woofer**].
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller* on page 133

2 Touch [On] to turn subwoofer output on.
To turn subwoofer output off, touch [**Off**].

3 Touch [Reverse] or [Normal] to select the phase of subwoofer output.
❒ If subwoofer output sound is not clear with [**Normal**], change it to [**Reverse**].

4 Touch ◄ or ► to select cut-off frequency.
Each time you touch ◄ or ► selects cut-off frequencies in the following order:
50 — **80** — **125** (Hz)
Only frequencies lower than those in the selected range are output from the subwoofer.

5 Touch [+] or [-] to adjust the output level of the subwoofer.
+6 to **-6** is displayed as the level is increased or decreased.

Using non fading output

When the non fading output setting is on, the audio signal does not pass through navigation system's low pass filter (for the subwoofer), but is output through the RCA output.

1 Touch [Non Fading] in Audio Settings menu.
Only when **Preout** (the subwoofer controller setting in **System Settings** menu) is **Full**, you can select [**Non Fading**].
➲ For details, refer to *Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller* on page 133

2 Touch [On] to turn non fading output on.
To turn non fading output off, touch [**Off**].

3 Touch [+] or [-] to adjust the output level of the non fading.
+6 to **-6** is displayed as the level is increased or decreased.

Adjusting loudness

Loudness compensates for deficiencies in the low- and high-sound ranges at low volume.

1 Touch [Loudness] in Audio Settings menu.

2 Touch [On] to turn loudness on.
To turn loudness off, touch [**Off**].

3 Touch ◄ or ► to select a desired level.
Each time you touch ◄ or ► selects level in the following order:
Low — **Mid** — **High**

Using the high pass filter

When you do not want low sounds from the subwoofer output frequency range to play from the front or rear speakers, turn **HPF** (high pass filter) on. Only frequencies higher than those in the selected range are output from the front or rear speakers.

1 Touch [HPF] in Audio Settings menu.

2 Touch [On] to turn high pass filter on.
To turn high pass filter off, touch [**Off**].

3 Touch ◄ or ► to select cut-off frequency.
Each time you touch ◄ or ► selects cut-off frequencies in the following order:
50 — **80** — **125** (Hz)
When **Preout** (the subwoofer controller setting in **System Settings** menu) is **Sub.W**, **HPF** function is effective for front speakers only.

If you change the acoustic field after you set it once, the high pass filter (**HPF**) setting turns **Off**.

Adjusting source levels

Source Level (source level adjustment) lets you adjust the volume level of each source to prevent radical changes in volume when switching between sources.

❒ Settings are based on the FM tuner volume level, which remains unchanged.

1 Compare the FM tuner volume level with the level of the source you wish to adjust.

2 Touch [Source Level] in Audio Settings menu.

3 Touch [+] or [-] to adjust the source volume.
+8 to **-8** is displayed as the source volume is increased or decreased.
Sources are set to same source level adjustment volume automatically.

- **CD** and **ROM** (**MP3**)
- **EXT 1** and **EXT 2**
- **AUX** and **AV INPUT**■

Customising the System Settings Items

System Settings lets you perform system set up of different settings for navigation system.

How to view and operate the System Settings

1 Press AV button.
The Navigation screen changes to the Audio source screen (of any source).

2 Touch [AV Settings].
The AV Settings screen appears.

3 Touch [System Settings].

4 Touch the item you want to change.
The setting change screen appears, or the setting changes by toggling it.

❒ Touch Next → or ← Back to move to the next or previous page.

5 Change Setting.

❒ Touch [**ESC**] to return to the selected source screen.
❒ To return to the previous screen, touch [**Back**].

Setting up the built-in DVD drive

You can change the preference for playing a DVD on the built-in DVD drive.
You can use this menu to change audio, subtitle, parental lock, and other DVD settings. Some changes or settings which you have set here may be invalid depending on the features of the DVD disc. For details, see the disc's instructions.

❒ You can enter this menu while [**DVD**] is selected as audio source.
❒ If you can enter this menu during DVD playback, playback will be stopped and return to the first chapter.

Setting the language

You can set each desired language for subtitle, audio and menu. If the selected language is recorded on the DVD, subtitles, audio, and menu are displayed in that language.

1 Switch the audio source to [DVD].

2 Touch [DVD-V Setup] in System Settings menu.

3 Touch [Subtitle Language], [Audio Language] or [Menu Language].
Each language menu is displayed and the currently set language is selected.

4 Touch the desired language.
When you select [**Others**], a language code input display is shown. Input the four digit code of the desired language then touch [**Enter**].
➲ For details, refer to *Language Code Chart for DVD* on page 137
❒ If the selected language is not recorded on the disc, the default language specified on the disc is output and displayed.
❒ You can also switch the subtitle and audio language by touching [**Subtitle**] or [**Audio**] during playback.
➲ For more details about "Changing the subtitle language during playback (Multi-subtitle)", refer to *Touch panel key operation* on page 89
➲ For more details about "Changing audio language during playback (Multi-audio)", refer to *Touch panel key operation* on page 89

Setting assist subtitles on or off

Assist subtitles offer explanations for the aurally impaired. However, they are only displayed if they are recorded on the DVD.

You can turn assist subtitles on or off as desired.

1 Touch [DVD-V Setup] in System Settings menu.

2 Touch [Assist Subtitle].
Touching [**Assist Subtitle**] switches between [**On**] and [**Off**].

Setting angle icon display

You can set to display the angle icon on scenes where the angle can be switched.

1 Touch [DVD-V Setup] in System Settings menu.

2 Touch [Multi Angle].
Touching [**Multi Angle**] switches between [**On**] and [**Off**].

Setting the aspect ratio

There are two kinds of display. A wide screen display has a width-to-height ratio (TV aspect) of 16:9, while a regular display has a TV aspect of 4:3. If you use a regular rear display has a TV aspect of 4:3, you can set the aspect ratio suitable for your rear display. (We recommend use this function only when you want to fit it to rear display.)

❒ When using a regular display, select either **Letter Box** or **Panscan**. Selecting **16:9** may result in an unnatural picture.

1 Touch [DVD-V Setup] in System Settings menu.

2 Touch [TV Aspect].
Each touch of [**TV Aspect**] changes the settings as follows:

- **16:9** — Wide screen picture (16:9) is displayed as it is (initial setting)
- **Letter Box** — The picture is in the shape of a letter box with black bands at the top and bottom of the screen
- **Panscan** — The picture is cut short at the right and left of the screen

❒ When playing discs that do not have a pan-scan system, the disc is played back with [**Letter Box**] even if you select [**Panscan**] setting. Confirm whether the disc package bears the 16 : 9 LB mark.

Setting the parental lock

Some DVD-Video discs let you use parental lock to set restrictions so that children cannot watch a violent and adult oriented scenes. You can set the parental lock level in steps as desired.

❒ When you set a parental lock level and then play a disc featuring parental lock, code number input indications may be displayed. In this case, playback will begin when the correct code number is input.

Setting the code number and level

When you first use this function, register your code number. If you do not register a code number, parental lock will not operate.

1 Touch [DVD-V Setup] in System Settings menu.

2 Touch [Parental Level].

3 Touch [0] — [9] to input a four digit code number.

4 While the input number is displayed, touch [Enter].
The code number is registered, and you can now set the level.

5 Touch any of [1] — [8] to select the desired level.
The parental lock level is set.

- **Level 8** — Playback of the entire disc is possible (initial setting)
- **Level 7** — **Level 2** — Playback of discs for children and non-adult oriented discs is possible
- **Level 1** — Only playback of discs for children is possible

- ❒ If you want to change the parental level, enter the registered code number. Proceed to Step 3.
- ❒ We recommend that you keep a record of your code number in case you forget it.
- ❒ The parental lock level is recorded on the disc. You can confirm it by looking at the disc package, the included literature or the disc itself. With discs that do not feature a recorded parental lock level, you cannot use parental lock.
- ❒ With some discs, parental lock operates to skip certain scenes only, after which normal playback resumes. For details, refer to the disc's instructions.
- ❒ If you forget the registered code number, touch [**Clear**] 10 times on the screen in the Step 3. The registered code number is canceled, letting you register a new one.

Changing the wide screen mode

CAUTION

For safety reasons, you cannot use some of these navigation functions while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and apply the handbrake (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

- **Touch [Wide Mode] in System Settings menu.**

The Wide Mode screen appears.
On the Wide Mode screen, you can select the following items:
Full, **Just**, **Cinema**, **Zoom**, or **Normal**
Normal (normal)
A 4:3 picture is displayed normally, giving you no sense of disparity since its proportions are the same as that of the normal picture.
Full (full)
A 4:3 picture is enlarged in the horizontal direction only, enabling you to enjoy a 4:3 TV picture (normal picture) without any omissions.
Just (just)
The picture is enlarged slightly at the centre and the amount of enlargement increases horizontally toward the ends of the picture, enabling you to enjoy a 4:3 picture without sensing any disparity even on a wide screen.
Cinema (cinema)
A picture is enlarged by the same proportion as **Full** or **Zoom** in the horizontal direction and by an intermediate proportion between **Full** and **Zoom** in the vertical direction; ideal for a cinema-sized picture (wide screen picture) where captions lie outside the frame.
Zoom (zoom)
A 4:3 picture is enlarged in the same proportion both vertically and horizontally; ideal for a cinema-sized picture (wide screen picture).

- ❒ Different settings can be memorised for each video source.
- ❒ When video is viewed in a wide screen mode that does not match its original aspect ratio, it may appear differently.
- ❒ Remember that use of this system for commercial or public viewing purposes may constitute an infringement on the author's rights protected by the Copyright Law.
- ❒ Video may appear grainy when viewed in **Cinema** or **Zoom** mode.
- ❒ The navigation map and the rear view camera picture is always **Full**.

Setting for rear view camera

The following two functions are available. The rear view camera feature requires a separately sold rear view camera (e.g. ND-BC2). (For details, consult your dealer.)

Camera for backing up

The navigation system features a function that automatically switches to the full-screen rear camera image installed on your vehicle. When the gearstick is in the REVERSE (R) position, the screen automatically switches to full-screen rear view camera.

Camera for Rear view mode
[**Rear View**] can be displayed at all times (e.g. when monitoring an attached trailer, etc.) as a split screen where map information is partially displayed. Please be aware that in this setting, camera image is not resized to fit, and that a portion of what is seen by the camera is not viewable.

CAUTION
Pioneer recommends the use of a camera which outputs mirror reversed images, otherwise screen image may appear reversed.

- ❒ Immediately confirm whether the display changes to a rear view camera image when the gearstick is moved to REVERSE (R) from another position.
- ❒ When the screen changes to full-screen rear view camera image during normal driving, switch to the opposite setting in [**Polarity**].
- ❒ Initially, this function is set to [**Off**].

1 Touch [Camera Input] in System Settings menu.

2 Touch [On] to turn rear view camera setting on.

- ❒ Unless this setting is [**On**], you cannot switch to **Rear View** mode.

3 Touch [Polarity] to select an appropriate setting for polarity.
Each time you touch [**Polarity**] switches between the following polarity:

- **Battery** — When the polarity of the connected lead is positive while the gearstick is in the REVERSE (R) position
- **GND** — When the polarity of the connected lead is negative while the gearstick is in the REVERSE (R) position

Setting the video input

You can switch the setting according to the connected component.

- ❒ Select [**Video**] to watch video of a connected component as **AV INPUT** source.

● **Touch [AV Input] in System Settings menu.**
Each touch of [**AV Input**] changes the settings as follows:

- **Off** — No video component is connected
- **Video** — External video component
- **EXT** — Pioneer external unit connected with an RCA video cable

- ❒ When a Pioneer external unit is connected with an IP-BUS cable, select [**EXT**]. When the audio source is [**EXT**], the "Video image" of the Pioneer external unit can be displayed.

Switching the auxiliary setting

It is possible to use auxiliary equipment with the navigation system as the one of sources. Activate the auxiliary setting when using auxiliary equipment connected to the navigation system.

● **Touch [AUX Input] in System Settings menu.**
Touching [**AUX Input**] switches between [**On**] and [**Off**].
➲ For details, refer to *Selecting [**AUX**] as the source* on page 122

Switching the muting/ attenuation timing

You can mute the audio source volume or attenuate the output signal. This setting is invalid for the mute signal has been received from the MUTE lead connected to the navigation unit. (Even if this setting is [**Off**], the navigation system will mute or attenuate the audio source volume when the signal is output via MUTE lead.)

● **Touch [Mute Set] in System Settings menu.**

Each touch of [**Mute Set**] changes the settings as follows:

- **Guide/Tel/VR** — The volume is muted or attenuated according to the following conditions
  - — When the navigation outputs the guidance voice.
  - — When you use a mobile phone via Bluetooth technology (dialling, talking, incoming call).
  - — When the voice recognition mode is activated.
- **Tel/VR** — The volume is muted or attenuated according to the following conditions
  - — When you use a mobile phone via Bluetooth technology (dialling, talking, incoming call).
  - — When the voice recognition mode is activated.
- **Off** — The volume does not change

❒ Operation returns to normal when the correspond action is ended.

❒ The navigation voice guidance itself cannot be attenuated or muted. If you want to mute the navigation guidance voice temporarily, use on the navigation map screen.

Switching the muting/ attenuation level

You can select the muting/attenuation level of [**Mute Set**]. This setting is also effective for a mute signal that has been received from the MUTE lead connected to the navigation unit.

❒ This menu is not available in the following cases:
  — Audio source is [**OFF**]
  — During muting/attenuation

● **Touch [Mute Level] in System Settings menu.**

Each touch of [**Mute Level**] changes the settings as follows:

- **All** — The volume becomes 0
- **–20dB** — The volume becomes 1/10
- **–10dB** — The volume becomes 1/3

❒ When you select [**All**], [**Mute**] is displayed and no audio adjustments are possible during the sound is turned off.

❒ When you select [**–20dB**] or [**–10dB**], no audio adjustments, except volume control, are possible during the sound is attenuated.

❒ Operation returns to normal when the correspond action is ended.

❒ Even when a mute signal has been received from MUTE lead connected to the navigation unit, navigation voice guidance cannot be attenuated or muted. If you want to mute the navigation guidance voice temporarily, use on the navigation map screen.

Changing the voice output of the navigation guidance

You can set the speaker to output the navigation guidance and phone voice, etc.

● **Touch [Guide/Tel SP] in System Settings menu.**

Each touch of [**Guide/Tel SP**] changes the settings as follows:

- **Left SP** — Uses only the front left speaker
- **Right SP** — Uses only the front right speaker
- **L+R SP** — Uses both the front right and left speakers

Switching the auto aerial setting

If the blue lead of the navigation system is connected to the aerial control terminal of the vehicle, select either of the following settings.

- **Power** — The aerial extends or turns on when the ignition switch is turns on. The aerial is stored or turned off when the ignition switch is turned off.
- **Radio** — The aerial extends or turns on only when the audio source is **FM** or **AM**. The aerial is stored or turned off when the source is switched to another.

● **Touch [Auto ANT] in System Settings menu.**

Touching [**Auto ANT**] switches between [**Power**] and [**Radio**].

❒ Regardless of whether [**Power**] or [**Radio**] is selected, turning off the ignition switch will cause the aerial to automatically retract or turn off.

Setting the clock display on the video image

You can select whether to display the clock on the video image screen without touch panel keys, such as DVD-Video, AV INPUT, or TV tuner.

● **Touch [Clock DISP] in System Settings menu.**

Touching [**Clock DISP**] switches between [**All SCRN**] and [**Audio SCRN**].

- **All SCRN** — The clock is overlaid on the "Video image"
- **Audio SCRN** — The clock is not overlaid on the "Video image"

Setting the CD recording mode

You can set whether to start recording tracks automatically when you play a CD, or to manually trigger recording.

● **Touch [REC Mode] in System Settings menu.**

Each touch of [**REC Mode**] changes the settings as follows:

- **Auto** — Records the tracks automatically when a CD is played
- **Manual** — Lets you select the tracks you want to record manually, and records them
- **Single** — Automatically records only the first track of the CD

Setting the rear output and subwoofer controller

The navigation system's rear output can be used for full-range speaker or subwoofer connection. If you switch **Rear SP** setting to **Sub.W**, you can connect a rear speaker lead directly to a subwoofer without using an auxiliary amp.

Initially, the navigation system is set for rear fullrange speaker connection. When rear output is connected to full-range speakers (when **Rear SP** setting is **Full**), you can connect the RCA subwoofer output (SUBWOOFER OUTPUT or NON-FADING OUTPUT) to a subwoofer. In this case, you can select whether to use the subwoofer controller's (low pass filter, phase) built-in amp of the navigation system or the auxiliary amp or subwoofer.

❒ If you change the subwoofer controller [**Rear SP**] or [**Preout**], [**Sub Woofer**] or [**Non Fading**] in **Audio Settings** menu return to the factory settings.

❒ Both rear speaker leads output and RCA rear output are switched simultaneously in this setting.

❒ **Rear SP** can be set only when the source is [**OFF**].

1 Touch [Rear SP] in System Settings menu.

2 Touch [Full] or [Sub.W] to switch the rear output setting.

❒ When no subwoofer is connected to the rear output, select **Full**. When a subwoofer is connected to the rear speaker leads directly, select **Sub.W**.

3 Touch [Preout] to switch the subwoofer output or non fading output.

❒ When [**Rear SP**] setting is **Sub.W**, [**Preout**] is invalid.

❒ Even if you change this setting, there is no output unless you turn [**Non Fading**] or [**Sub Woofer**] in **Audio Settings** menu [**On**].

➲ For details, refer to *Using non fading output* on page 126
➲ For details, refer to *Using subwoofer output* on page 126

Switching Auto PI seek

The navigation system can automatically search for a different station with the same programming, even during preset recall.
❒ [**Auto PI**] can be set only when the source is [**OFF**].

● **Touch [Auto PI] in System Settings menu.**
Touching [**Auto PI**] switches between [**On**] and [**Off**].

Setting the FM tuning step

Normally the FM tuning step employed by seek tuning is 50 kHz. When **AF** or **TA** is on, the tuning step automatically changes to 100 kHz. It may be preferable to set the tuning step to 50 kHz when **AF** is on.
❒ [**FM Step**] can be set only when the source is [**OFF**].

● **Touch [FM Step] in System Settings menu.**
Each time you touch [**FM Step**] will switch the FM tuning step between 50 kHz and 100 kHz while **AF** or **TA** is on.
❒ The tuning step remains at 50 kHz during manual tuning.

Selecting the TV signal

This setting is required when a Pioneer TV tuner is connected using the AV-BUS. (This setting is not necessary otherwise.) If the image cannot be displayed correctly using [**Auto**], switch the setting to the TV system (Colour system) that your TV can receive, or to the TV system (Colour system) currently being received.

❒ [**TV SIG**] can be set only when the source is [**OFF**].

● **Touch [TV SIG] in System Settings menu.**
Each touch of [**TV SIG**] changes the settings as follows:
- **Auto** — Select this setting when you watch the channel in both PAL and SECAM system.
- **PAL** — Select this setting when you watch the channel in PAL system only.
- **SECAM** — Select this setting when you watch the channel in SECAM system only.

❒ TV tuner has no compatibility for selected TV system (Colour system), video image is not output correctly even though you set the appropriate setting. For the details of compatibility for TV system (Colour system), refer to the “Owner’s Manual” of the TV tuner.■

Other Functions

Selecting the video for “Rear display”

You can choose either to show the same image as the front screen or to show the selected source on the “Rear display”.
❒ The navigation system automatically switches between the colour system (NTSC, PAL, SECAM) for each video and outputs the video on the “Rear Display”. To correctly output each type of video on the “Rear Display”, we recommend using a “Rear Display” with a function to automatically switch the colour system (e.g. AVD-W7900).

● **Touch the source icon and then touch [REAR SCREEN].**
Each touch of [**REAR SCREEN**] changes the settings as follows:
- **MIRROR** — The video on the front screen of the navigation unit is output to the “Rear display”

- **DVD** — The video and sound of the DVDs are output to the “Rear display”
- **AV** — The video and sound of **AV INPUT** are output to the “Rear display”

❒ When **MIRROR** is selected, the following restrictions are applied to “Rear display”.
— When the TV tuner is connected with AV-BUS, its “Video image” cannot be output. (Connect the TV tuner’s rear output to “Rear display” directly.)
— When selecting [**Rear View**] in the map display, nothing is displayed.
— All sounds cannot be output for “Rear display”.
— There is no picture on “Rear display” while [**Picture Adjust**] for [**Back-Camera**] is carried out.
— The map screen navigation images output to the “Rear display” differ from standard NTSC format images. Therefore, their quality will be inferior to the images that appear on the front screen.

❒ When **DVD** is selected, the following restrictions are applied to “Rear display”.
— When a CD or MP3 disc is set in the built-in DVD drive, nothing is output.

❒ When **AV** is selected, the following restrictions are applied to “Rear display”.
— The “Video image” and sound are output only when **AV INPUT** has both video and sound.
— The “Video image” and sound are output only when the appropriate setting on [**AV Input**] is [**Video**].

Operating the picture adjustment

CAUTION

For safety reasons, you cannot use some of these navigation functions while your vehicle is in motion. To enable these functions, you must stop in a safe place and apply the handbrake (refer to *To ensure safe driving* on page 18).

You can adjust the picture for each source and rear view camera.

1 Press V button to display Picture Adjust screen.

- **Brightness** — Adjusts the black intensity
- **Contrast** — Adjusts the contrast
- **Color** — Adjusts the colour saturation
- **Hue** — Adjusts the tone of colour (red is emphasised or green is emphasised)
- **Dimmer** — Adjusts the brightness of display
- [**Back-Camera**] — Shows the picture adjustment display for the rear view camera

❒ Touching [**Source**] while adjusting the rear view camera image returns you to the previous screen.

❒ The adjustments of **Brightness**, **Contrast** and **Dimmer** are stored separately when your vehicle’s headlights are off (daytime) and when your vehicle’s headlights are on (nighttime). These are switched automatically depending on the vehicle’s headlights are on or off.

❒ You cannot adjust **Color** and **Hue** for the source without a video and navigation map display.

❒ The setting contents can be memorised separately for the following screen and the “Video image”.
— **AM**/**FM**/**M-CD**/**iPod**/**AUX** screen
— **LIBRARY** (Music Library) screen
— Built-in DVD drive
— **TV** image
— **AV INPUT** and **EXT 1**, **EXT 2**
— Rear view camera image
— Navigation map and menu screen

❒ The picture adjustment may not be available with some rear view cameras.

❒ Because of the LCD screen characteristics, you may not be able to adjust the screen at low temperatures.

2 Touch [+] or [-] to adjust the desired item.

Each time you touch [**+**] or [**-**] increases or decreases the level of the desired item.

3 Touch [ESC] to return to the previous screen.

Switching the backlight on or off

By turning off the backlight of the LCD screen, you can turn off the screen display and the voice guidance.

- **Press and hold V button.**

The backlight turns off, and the screen turns off.

❒ Press **V** button once again to turn on the backlight, and the screen is displayed. ▣

Language Code Chart for DVD

Language (code), input code	Language (code), input code	Language (code), input code
Japanese (ja), 1001	Guarani (gn), 0714	Pashto, Pushto (ps), 1619
English (en), 0514	Gujarati (gu), 0721	Quechua (qu), 1721
French (fr), 0618	Hausa (ha), 0801	Rhaeto-Romance (rm), 1813
Spanish (es), 0519	Hindi (hi), 0809	Kirundi (rn), 1814
German (de), 0405	Croatian (hr), 0818	Rumanian (ro), 1815
Italian (it), 0920	Hungarian (hu), 0821	Kinyarwanda (rw), 1823
Chinese (zh), 2608	Armenian (hy), 0825	Sanskrit (sa), 1901
Dutch (nl), 1412	Interlingua (ia), 0901	Sindhi (sd), 1904
Portuguese (pt), 1620	Interlingue (ie), 0905	Sango (sg), 1907
Swedish (sv), 1922	Inupiak (ik), 0911	Serbo-Croatian (sh), 1908
Russian (ru), 1821	Indonesian (in), 0914	Shinghalese (si), 1909
Korean (ko), 1115	Icelandic (is), 0919	Slovak (sk), 1911
Greek (el), 0512	Hebrew (iw), 0923	Slovenian (sl), 1912
Afar (aa), 0101	Yiddish (ji), 1009	Samoan (sm), 1913
Abkhazian (ab), 0102	Javanese (jw), 1023	Shona (sn), 1914
Afrikaans (af), 0106	Georgian (ka), 1101	Somali (so), 1915
Amharic (am), 0113	Kazakh (kk), 1111	Albanian (sq), 1917
Arabic (ar), 0118	Greenlandic (kl), 1112	Serbian (sr), 1918
Assamese (as), 0119	Cambodian (km), 1113	Siswati (ss), 1919
Aymara (ay), 0125	Kannada (kn), 1114	Sesotho (st), 1920
Azerbaijani (az), 0126	Kashmiri (ks), 1119	Sundanese (su), 1921
Bashkir (ba), 0201	Kurdish (ku), 1121	Swahili (sw), 1923
Belorussian (be), 0205	Kirghiz (ky), 1125	Tamil (ta), 2001
Bulgarian (bg), 0207	Latin (la), 1201	Telugu (te), 2005
Bihari (bh), 0208	Lingala (ln), 1214	Tajik (tg), 2007
Bislama (bi), 0209	Laotian (lo), 1215	Thai (th), 2008
Bengali, Bangla (bn), 0214	Lithusnian (lt), 1220	Tigrinya (ti), 2009
Tibetan (bo), 0215	Latvian, Lettish (lv), 1222	Turkmen (tk), 2011
Breton (br), 0218	Malagasy (mg), 1307	Tagalog (tl), 2012
Catalan (ca), 0301	Maori (mi), 1309	Setswana (tn), 2014
Corsican (co), 0315	Macedonian (mk), 1311	Tongan (to), 2015
Czach (cs), 0319	Malayalam (ml), 1312	Turkish (tr), 2018
Welsh (cy), 0325	Mongolian (mn), 1314	Tsonga (ts), 2019
Danish (da), 0401	Moldavian (mo), 1315	Tatar (tt), 2020
Bhutani (dz), 0426	Marathi (mr), 1318	Twi (tw), 2023
Esperanto (eo), 0515	Malay (ms), 1319	Ukrainian (uk), 2111
Estonian (et), 0520	Maltese (mt), 1320	Urdu (ur), 2118
Basque (eu), 0521	Burmese (my), 1325	Uzbek (uz), 2126
Persian (fa), 0601	Nauru (na), 1401	Vietnamese (vi), 2209
Finnish (fi), 0609	Nepali (ne), 1405	Volapük (vo), 2215
Fiji (fj), 0610	Norwegian (no), 1415	Wolof (wo), 2315
Faroese (fo), 0615	Occitan (oc), 1503	Xhosa (xh), 2408
Frisian (fy), 0625	Oromo (om), 1513	Yoruba (yo), 2515
Irish (ga), 0701	Oriya (or), 1518	Zulu (zu), 2621
Scottish Gaelic (gd), 0704	Panjabi (pa), 1601	
Galician (gl), 0712	Polish (pl), 1612	

To Ensure Safe Driving

CAUTION

For safety reasons, Voice Help menu (Voice Recog.Help) is not available while your vehicle is in motion. To enable this function, you must stop in a safe place and put on the handbrake before setting your route.

Depending on the selected languages, the commands which you registered before may not be available.
➲ For more details about “Relation for the language”, refer to *Available Voice Commands* on page 142

Basics of Voice Operation

Your Pioneer navigation system uses the latest in voice recognition technology. You can use voice commands to operate many of its functions. This chapter describes where you can use voice commands, and also what commands the system accepts.

Flow of voice operation

You can start voice operation any time even when the map screen is displayed or audio is operated. (Some operations are not available.) The basic steps of voice operation are as follows.

1 Touch VOICE icon to activate voice operation.

2 Speak a command into the microphone after the beep.

3 When the command is recognised, the navigation system displays the response message on the screen, and pronounces it in some cases.

4 As necessary, repeat Step 3.

5 The requested operation will be carried out.

- The voice operation may not be operable for a minute after the navigation system has booted up.
- If you operate using “CD-SR1” Steering Remote Control (sold separately), the following buttons can be used for operation:

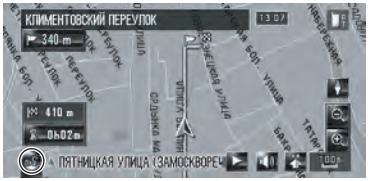
VR ACTIVATION / OFF HOOK button:
Same function as **VOICE** icon.
VR CANCEL / ON HOOK button:
Return to previous screen.

To start voice operation

No sounds can be output during .

- **Touch VOICE icon.**

Navigation screen



Audio screen

❒ Depending on the operating country of the navigation system, some commands displayed in Voice Help may be unavailable. Available commands are in white and unavailable commands are in grey.

When using voice operation for the first time

Until you are familiar with this system, it is recommended that you stop the vehicle in a safe place and refer to the commands displayed in the Voice Help menu (a list of the words you can speak). When your vehicle is parked with the handbrake on, see the Voice Help menu and speak voice command on that menu (except for some cases).

Voice Help menu

VOICE icon

- When voice command is possible
- When voice command is not accepted

❒ When you say "**Voice Help**", the navigation system pronounces the displayed words that can be vocalised.

❒ If no **VOICE** icon is displayed, check to see whether the microphone is properly connected and turn the power on again.

❒ If there are multiple pages, the voice help menu can be switched by using or on the screen. You can also switch the page by saying "**Next page**" or "**Previous page**".

To cancel voice operation

You can cancel voice operation features at any time by saying "**Cancel**". After you cancel voice operation, the map is displayed.

❒ If no command is made in the next 6 seconds or the recognition fails three times successively, the voice recognition switches to standby mode. To reactivate voice operation, touch **VOICE** icon.

Tips for Voice Operation

For your voice commands to be correctly recognised and interpreted, ensure that conditions are suitable for recognition.

Reduce the volume setting on your vehicle audio system

➲ For details, refer to *Switching the muting/attenuation timing* on page 131

Close the vehicle windows

Please note that wind through the vehicle window or miscellaneous noise from outside the vehicle can interfere with voice operation.

Position the microphone carefully

For optimum pick-up, the microphone should be fixed at a suitable distance directly in front of the driver.

Pause before giving a command

Speaking too soon may cause the recognition to fail.

Pronounce your commands carefully

Speak slowly, deliberately, and clearly.

❒ If the registered voice command and the default voice command is the same, the registered voice command (e.g. the pronunciation for the entry in "Address Book" and the playlist in Music library) will take priority. In this case, the default voice command will not function. To use the default voice command, change or delete the registered voice command that is identical to the default voice command.

An Example of Voice Operation

Search for POI in vicinity

In this example, you want to search for the nearest petrol station and set it as your destination.

❒ Give the following verbal commands after switching to the navigation screen.

➲ For details, refer to *Voice commands related to navigation* on page 143

1 Press MAP button to display the navigation map screen.

2 Touch VOICE icon.

A list of commands for voice operation appears. After the message, the beep indicates that the system is ready to accept your voice command. Say a command after this beep.

3 Say “Destination”.

A message to prompt the next operation is given.

4 Say “Vicinity Search”.

Say the corresponding commands for the function you want to operate. Here, the selection method of your destination is specified. When you want to search the petrol station nearest to the current location, say “**Vicinity Search**”.

The message “**Vicinity search. Please request POI category.**” appears, and the navigation system pronounces that message.

5 Say “Petrol Station”.

The message “**Vicinity search. Petrol Station**” appears.

The map of the nearest petrol station is shown.

❒ For categories that can be used as the voice commands, refer to “*Category list for vicinity search*”.

➲ For details, refer to *Category list for vicinity search* on page 151

6 Touch VOICE icon.

7 Say “Next” or “Previous” to select the desired facilities.

8 After confirming the location, say “Set As Destination”.

If there is no route, the system starts the route calculation. If the route is already set, touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation.

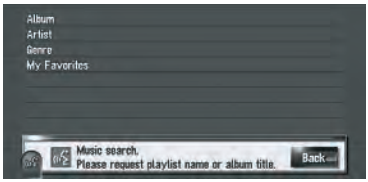
Search for the playlist

In this example, you want to search for a playlist and play that playlist.

1 Touch VOICE icon when the audio source is "LIBRARY".

2 Say "Music Search".

3 Say the desired group.



❒ If the desired group is already selected, you can skip this step.

4 Say the name of the playlist you want to play.

❒ If there are multiple pages, voice help menu can be switched by using ◄ or ► on the screen. You can also switch the page by saying "**Next page**" or "**Previous page**".
❒ You can also search the track in the current playlist by saying "**Track Search**".■

Available Voice Commands

This section describes the flow and available commands of each voice operation. Depending on the selected language in [**Regional Settings**], the voice operation works as below.

[Language] in [Regional Settings]	The language for voice operation
English, Russian, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian	English
Dutch, Flemish	Dutch
Spanish, Portuguese	Spanish
German	German
French	French
Italian	Italian

- When [**Language**] in [**Regional Settings**] is changed to another language, the commands that you registered can be used only if the language for voice operation is the same.
- For <Registered location's pronunciation > shown on the following chart, say the registered pronunciation. For example, if the registered pronunciation in address book is "My office" and you want to operate "Search by entry on the address book", say "My office". You can hear and edit the pronunciation.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Changing a pronunciation* on page 57
- For <Registered phone book's pronunciation > shown on the following chart, say the registered pronunciation. For example, if the registered pronunciation in phone book is "My friend" and you want to operate "*Telephone Book*", say "My friend". You can hear and edit the pronunciation.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Editing the entry in "Phone Book"* on page 68
- For <Album playlist name>, <Artist playlist name >, <Track name> shown on the following chart, say their name in the music library (if you edited their pronunciation, say their pronunciation). You can hear and edit the pronunciation.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Changing the pronunciation of a playlist name or track name* on page 110
- For <Category Name>and <Sub Category Name> in "*Vicinity Search*", refer to "Category list for vicinity search" and say the desired category in that list.
- You can skip the commands with the mark (*). For example, in case search by Point of interest, the system can recognise the command even if you say "*Vicinity Search*" without saying "*Destination*".
- If some candidates have been found, the candidate list appears. Select the one from the list and proceed to next step.
- During the voice operation, location screen (A) or (B) may appear. In such a case, go to "*Location screen (A) and (B)*" in the later section, and continue the voice operation.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Location screen (A) and (B)* on page 146
- The voice operations related the telephone are available only using hands-free phoning feature of this system and is unavailable during a call.
  ➲ For details, refer to *Using Hands-free Phoning* on page 61
- Terms written in italics are voice commands.

Voice commands related to navigation

❒ Give the following verbal commands after switching to the navigation screen.

Basic Operation

Back ➞ Return the previous screen.
Cancel ➞ Cancel the voice operation.
Current Location ➞ Return the current location map screen.
Voice Help ➞ Pronounces the display words that can be vocalised.
Next Page, *Previous Page* ➞ Switch the page of Voice Help Menu.

Search by entry on the address book

*Destination** ➞ *Address Book** ➞ *<Registered location's pronunciation>* ➞ Location Screen (A)

Search the facilities in vicinity

*Destination** ➞ *Vicinity Search* ➞ *<Category Name>*, *<Sub Category Name>* ➞ Location Screen (B)

Displaying the destination history

*Destination** ➞ *Destination History* ➞ Display the Destination History screen.

Setting the route to your home

*Destination** ➞ *Return Home* ➞ If the route already set, touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation. (If there is no route, the system starts the route calculation.)

Making phone call to your home

*Destination** ➞ *Call Home* ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to call your home (Only when the phone number is registered in your home.)

Setting your home to waypoint

*Destination** ➞ *Waypoint Home* ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation. (This function is only available if you have set the destination.)

Display the map of surroundings on your home

*Destination** ➞ *Display Home* ➞ Display the map of surroundings on your home.

Display the map of surroundings on your destination

*Destination** ➞ *Display Destination* ➞ Display the map of surroundings on your destination.

Set the map location as your destination

Scroll the navigation map or switch the scroll mode from search result screen. ➞ *Basic Operation** ➞ *Set As Destination* ➞ If the route already set, touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation. If there is no route, the system starts the route calculation.

Set the map location as your waypoint

Scroll the navigation map or switch the scroll mode from search result screen. → *Basic Operation** → *Set As Waypoint* → Touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation.

Registering the map location to the address book

*Basic Operation** → *Registration* → The system register that point and Information edit screen appears.

Operating the navigation map scale

*Map Operation** → *Change Scale** → *XXXX kilometre(s) Scale*, *XXXX metre(s) Scale <25metres Scale, 50metres Scale, 100metres Scale, 200metres Scale, 500metres Scale, 1kilometre Scale, 2kilometres Scale, 5kilometres Scale, 10kilometres Scale, 20kilometres Scale, 50kilometres Scale, 100kilometres Scale, 200kilometres Scale, 500kilometres Scale>* → Map screen will be changed to selected scale.

Notes:

- These commands are available only when [**km / mile**] setting is [**km**].
- This function is not available in vehicle dynamics mode.

*Map Operation** → *Change Scale** → *XXXX mile(s) Scale <0.02miles Scale, 0.05miles Scale, 0.1miles Scale, 0.25miles Scale, 0.5miles Scale, 0.75miles Scale, 1mile Scale, 2.5miles Scale, 5miles Scale, 10miles Scale, 25miles Scale, 50miles Scale, 100miles Scale, 250miles Scale>* → Map screen will be changed to selected scale.

Notes:

- These commands are available only when [**km / mile**] setting is [**mile**].
- This function is not available in vehicle dynamics mode.

*Map Operation** → *Change Scale** → *XXXX mile/yards Scale <25yards Scale, 50yards Scale, 100yards Scale, 0.25miles Scale, 0.5miles Scale, 0.75miles Scale, 1mile Scale, 2.5miles Scale, 5miles Scale, 10miles Scale, 25miles Scale, 50miles Scale, 100miles Scale, 250miles Scale>* → Map screen will be changed to selected scale.

Notes:

- These commands are available only when [**km / mile**] setting is [**Mile&Yard**].
- This function is not available in vehicle dynamics mode.

*Map Operation** → *Change Scale** → *Zoom Out*, *Zoom In* → Map screen will zoom out or zoom in.

Operating the view mode

*Map Operation** → *Change View Mode** → *Map Mode*, *Driver's View*, *2D Twin Map View*, *3D Twin Map View*, *Street List Mode*, *Mixed Mode*, *Rear View*, *Vehicle Dynamics* → Map screen will be changed to selected view mode.

Operating the map orientation

*Map Operation** → *Heading Up*, *North Up* → Map orientation will be changed.

Recalculating the route

*Route Options** → *Change Route** → *Rerouting*, *Use Main Road*, *Use Fast Route*, *Use Short Route*, *Use Motorway*, *Avoid Motorway*, *Use Ferry*, *Avoid Ferry*, *Use Toll Road*, *Avoid Toll Road* → If the route already set, touch **VOICE** icon to recalculate.

Checking the current route

*Route Options** → *Route Profile* → Displaying the route profile screen.

*Route Options** → *Next Guidance* → You can hear the information of next guidance point.

Cancelling the route
*Route Options** ➞ *Cancel Route* ➞ If the route is already set, touch **VOICE** icon to cancel the current route.
*Route Options** ➞ *Cancel Waypoint* ➞ If the waypoint is already set, touch **VOICE** icon to cancel route until next waypoint.

Operating the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth technology
*Call** ➞ *Telephone Book* ➞ *<Registered phone book's pronunciation>* ➞ If the registered entry in phone book has telephone number data, touch **VOICE** icon to call the entry.
*Call** ➞ *Call Registered Point* ➞ *<Registered location's pronunciation>* ➞ If the registered location has telephone number data, touch **VOICE** icon to call the registered location.
*Call** ➞ *Redial* ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to redial.
*Call** ➞ *Call Phone Number* ➞ Say the number you want to call. ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to dial. (Note 1)
*Call** ➞ *Received Call* ➞ Displaying the received call list.
*Call** ➞ *Call Favorite X* ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to dial.
*Call** ➞ *Call Home* ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to call your home (Only when the phone number is registered in your home.)

(Note 1): International call with using "+" is not available in the voice operation.

Erase the tracking
*Other Operation** ➞ *Erase Tracks* ➞ Touch **VOICE** icon to delete the tracking.

Turning on or off the Overlay POI
*Other Operation** ➞ *Display Overlay POI* ➞ Displaying the selected POI in Overlay POI.
*Other Operation** ➞ *Hide Overlay POI* ➞ Turn off Overlay POI.

Voice commands related to AV operation

❒ Give the following verbal commands after switching the correspond audio source (except for "Common AV commands").

Common AV commands
*AV Operation** ➞ *Change Display** ➞ *Navigation Screen* ➞ Switching to the navigation map or menu screen.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Change Display** ➞ *AV Screen* ➞ Switching to the Audio source screen.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Source Off* ➞ Turning the Audio source off.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Change Source** ➞ *CD*, *DVD*, *AM*, *FM*, *TV*, *MCD*, *AV Input*, *AUX*, *iPod*, *EXTERNAL1*, *EXTERNAL2*, *Music Library* ➞ Switching to the desired audio source. (You cannot switch to an unavailable source.)

Operation for Multi-CD
*AV Operation** ➞ *Disc 1* to *Disc 12* ➞ Selecting the disc for playback.

Operation for FM
*AV Operation** ➞ *Preset 1* to *Preset 6* ➞ Switching to that preset station directly.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Change Band* ➞ Switching the band.

Operation for AM
*AV Operation** ➞ *Preset 1* to *Preset 6* ➞ Switching to that preset station directly.

Operation for TV
*AV Operation** ➞ *Preset 1* to *Preset 12* ➞ Switching to that preset station directly.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Change Band* ➞ Switching the band.

Operation for CD
*AV Operation** ➞ *Change Media* ➞ Switching the CD-DA part and CD-ROM (MP3) part.

Operation for Music Library
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *Album* ➞ *<Album Playlist name>* ➞ Playback the selected album playlist.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *<Album Playlist name>* ➞ Playback the selected album playlist. (Note 2)
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *Artist* ➞ *<Artist Playlist name>* ➞ Playback the selected artist playlist.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *<Artist Playlist name>* ➞ Playback the selected artist playlist. (Note 2)
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *Genre* ➞ *<Genre name>* ➞ Playback the selected genre playlist.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *<Genre name>* ➞ Playback the selected genre playlist. (Note 2)
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *My Favorites* ➞ *My Favorite 1, My Favorite 2, My Favorite 3, My Favorite 4, My Mix* ➞ Playback selected playlist.
*AV Operation** ➞ *Music Search** ➞ *My Favorite 1, My Favorite 2, My Favorite 3, My Favorite 4, My Mix* ➞ Playback selected playlist. (Note 2)
*AV Operation** ➞ *Track Search* ➞ *<Track name>* ➞ Playback the selected track. (Note 3)

(Note 2):This operation is available only when that group is already selected.
(Note 3):This operation is available for the playlist currently playing.

Location screen (A) and (B)

Location screen (A)

The following commands can be vocalised:

Set As Destination
If the route already set, touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation. If there is no route, the system starts the route calculation.
Set As Waypoint
Touch **VOICE** icon to start route calculation.
Display Map
Displays the map of surroundings on that location.

Location screen (B)

The following commands can be vocalised:

Set As Destination
Same as above.

Set As Waypoint
Same as above.

Display Map
Same as above.

Next
See the next POI.

Previous
See the previous POI.

Other Voice Commands

The navigation system also can recognise the words in the following list.

Other voice commands for navigation operation

Preferential voice command	Other voice command
Back	*Return, Before*
Cancel	*Escape, Skip*
Current Location	*My Location*
Voice Help	*Recognition Help, Help*
Next Page	*Next, Following*
Previous Page	*Back Page*
Basic Operation	*Basics, Basic*
Set As Destination	*Set As Destination*
Set As Waypoint	*Set Waypoint, Waypoint*
Registration	*Register, Store*
Destination	*Go To, Search*
Address Book	*Registered Points, My Addresses, Search By Address Book*
Destination History	*Search History, Destination List*
Vicinity Search	*Vicinity, Search Around, Search In Vicinity*
Return Home	*Go Home, Drive Home*
Waypoint Home	*Waypoint To Home, Registered Home As Waypoint*
Call Home	*Phone Home, Dial Home*
Display Home	*Show Home*
Display Destination	*Destination Map, Show Destination*
Map Operation	*Map, Map Option*
Zoom Out	*Zoom Out*
Zoom In	*Zoom In*
Change Scale	*Scale, Zoom*
XXXX metre(s) Scale	*XXX metre(s)*
XXXX kilometre(s) Scale	*XXXX kilometre(s)*
XXXX mile(s) Scale	*XXXX mile(s)*
XXXX yards Scale	*XXXX yards*
Change View Mode	*View Mode, Change View*
Map Mode	*Normal Map, Flat Map*

Driver's View	*Driver, 3D*
2D Twin Map View	*2D Twin, 2D Split*
3D Twin Map View	*3D Twin, 3D Split*
Street List Mode	*Turns, Turn View*
Mixed Mode	*Guide, Arrow*
Rear View	*Rear, Back View*
Vehicle Dynamics	*Dynamics, Meters*
North Up	*North, Compass*
Heading Up	*Heading Up*
Route Options	*Change Route Options*
Change Route	*Edit Route*
Rerouting	*New Route, Update Route*
Use Main Road	*Main Roads, Take Main Roads*
Use Fast Route	*Fast Route, Fastest Route*
Use Short Route	*Short Route, Shortest Route*
Use Motorway	*Motorways, Highways*
Use Ferry	*Ferry, Ferries*
Use Toll Road	*Toll Road, Payroad*
Avoid Motorway	*Avoid Highway, Avoid Interstate*
Avoid Ferry	*Avoid Ferries, Skip Ferries*
Avoid Toll Road	*Avoid Tolls, Avoid Pay*
Cancel Route	*Delete Route, Cancel Guidance*
Route Profile	*Profile*
Cancel Waypoint	*Delete Waypoint, Take Away Waypoint*
Next Guidance	*Following Guidance, Guidance After This*
Call	*Dial, Ring, Dial Out , Place A Call, Make A Call*
Call Registered Point	*Call Address Book, Call Registered*
Call Phone Number	*Call By Number, Call Number, Call By Phone Number, Call Using Phone Number*
Telephone Book	*Tel Book, Phone Book*
Redial	*Call Again, Phone Again*
Call Favorite X	*Call X, Phone X*
Received Call	*Received, Who Called*
Call Home	*Phone Home, Dial Home*
Other Operation	*Other, Others*

Erase Tracks	*Delete Tracks, Remove Tracks*
Display Overlay POI	*Show Overlay POI, Display POIs*
Yes	*Ok, I Agree*
No	*Not Ok, I Disagree*

Other voice commands for AV operation

Preferential voice command	Other voice command
Navigation Screen	*Navigation, Navi*
AV Screen	*AV, Audio*
Change Source	*Next Source, Source Change*
CD	*Change To CD, Switch To CD*
DVD	*Change To DVD, Switch To DVD*
TV	*Change To TV, Switch To TV*
AM	*Change To AM, Switch To AM*
FM	*Change To FM, Radio*
AV Input	*Video Input*
MCD	*CD Changer*
Music Library	*Change To Music Library, Switch To Music Library*
Music Search	*Search My Music, Search Music*
Album	*Search By Album, Search Album*
Artist	*Search By Artist, Search Artist*
Genre	*Search By Genre, Search Genre*
Rock/Pop	*Rock, Pop*
Hip-Hop/Rap	*Hip-Hop, Rap*
Soul/Urban	*Soul, Urban*
Track Search	*Search By Track*
iPod	*Change To iPod, Switch To iPod*

Category list for vicinity search

❒ If you say the category name (category title), the system searches for vicinity POIs in that category without taking the chain into consideration.

Category name: Restaurants
Italian, Chinese, Fast Food, Thai, Greek, French, Japanese, Indian, Sea Food, Grill and Steak House, Spanish, Restaurants; Others

Category name: Petrol Station
AGIP, BP, LOTOS, NESTE, SHELL, Petrol Station; Others

Category name: Hotel
BEST WESTERN, HOLIDAY INN, MARRIOTT, NOVOTEL, PARK INN, RADISSON SAS, SHERATON, Hotel; Others

Category name: Parking
Car Park, Open Parking Areas, Rest Area

Category name: Shopping
Shopping Centre, Shopping; Others

Category name: Cash Dispenser/Bank
Cash Dispenser/Bank; Others

Category name: Sport
Sports Centre, Golf Course, Tennis Court, Ice Skating Rink, Swimming Pool, Water Sports

Category name: Leisure
Disco, Museum, Cinema, Arcades and Casino, Amusement Park, Camping, Tourist Attraction, Tourist Office, Marina, Beach, Stadium, Concert Hall, Theatre and Opera, Cultural Centre, Parks and Gardens, Zoo

Category name: Medical
Hospital, Pharmacy, Dentist, Doctor, Veterinarian

Category name: Public Service
Exhibition and Conference Centre, Universities and Schools, Post Office, Library, Church, Police Station, Embassy, Courthouse, Government Office, City Centre

Category name: Transport
Airport, Train Station, Ferry Terminal, Border Crossing, Airport Terminal, Underground

Category name: Car Dealer
AUDI, BENTLEY, BMW, CADILLAC, CHEVROLET, CHRYSLER, CITROEN, FERRARI, FIAT, FORD, HONDA, HYUNDAI, JAGUAR, JEEP, KIA, LADA, LAND ROVER, LEXUS, LOTUS, MASERATI, MAYBACH, MAZDA, MERCEDES-BENZ, MERCEDES-BENZ TRUCKS, MG, MINI, MITSUBISHI, NISSAN, OPEL, PEUGEOT, PORSCHE, RENAULT, ROLLS-ROYCE, ROVER, SAAB, SEAT, SKODA, SSANGYONG, SUBARU, SUZUKI, TOYOTA, VOLKSWAGEN, VOLVO, VOLVO TRUCKS, Car Dealer; Others

Category name: Vehicle Repair Facility
AUDI; Repair, BMW; Repair, BOSCH; Repair, CHRYSLER; Repair, FORD; Repair, HONDA; Repair, JEEP; Repair, MERCEDES-BENZ; Repair, MITSUBISHI; Repair, NISSAN; Repair, PEUGEOT; Repair, RENAULT; Repair, SKODA; Repair, SUZUKI; Repair, VOLVO; Repair, Vehicle Repair Facility; Others

Category name: Rental Car Agency
AVIS, BUDGET, EUROPCAR, HERTZ, Rental Car Agency; Others

■

Appendix

Troubleshooting

If you have problems operating your navigation system, refer to this section. The most common problems are listed below, along with likely causes and solutions. While this list is not comprehensive, it should answer your most common problems. If a solution to your problem cannot be found here, contact your dealer or the nearest authorised Pioneer service facility.

Problems in the screen

Symptom	Cause	Action (See)
Power doesn't turn on. The navigation system doesn't operate.	Leads and connectors are incorrectly connected.	Confirm once more that all connections are correct.
	The fuse is blown.	Rectify the reason for the fuse blowing, then replace the fuse. Be very sure to install a correct fuse with the same rate.
	Noise and other factors are causing the internal memory to operate incorrectly.	Refer to "Page 164" and carry out appropriate measures.
	The hard disk drive is not working because the temperature is extremely low or high.	Wait until the temperature inside the vehicle falls or rises.
When the ignition switch is turned ON (or turned to ACC), the motor sounds.	This system confirms whether a disc is loaded or not.	This is a normal operation.
The navigation does not boot up.	The power cable is not wired correctly.	Turn the system off and the check the wiring.
	The hard disk drive is not running because the temperature is too low.	Wait until the inside of the vehicle warms up.
	The hard disk drive is defective.	Consult your authorised Pioneer dealer.

You cannot position your vehicle on the map or the positioning error is large.	The quality of signals from the GPS satellites is poor, causing reduced positioning accuracy. Such a loss of signal quality may happen for the following reasons: • The GPS aerial is in an unsuitable location. • Obstacles are blocking signals from the satellites. • The position of satellites relative to your vehicle is bad. • Signals from the GPS satellites have been modified to reduce accuracy. (GPS satellites are operated by the US Department of Defense, and the US government reserves the right to distort positioning data for military reasons. This may lead to greater positioning errors.)	Check the GPS signal reception and the position of the GPS aerial if necessary, or continue driving until reception improves. Keep the aerial clear. (Page 74)
You cannot position your vehicle on the map or the positioning error is large.	The quality of signals from the GPS satellites is poor, causing reduced positioning accuracy. Such a loss of signal quality may happen for the following reasons: • If a vehicle phone or mobile phone is used near the GPS aerial, GPS reception may be lost temporarily. • Do not cover the GPS aerial with spray paint or vehicle wax, because this may block the reception of GPS signals. Snow buildup can also degrade the signals.	Check the GPS signal reception and the position of the GPS aerial if necessary, or continue driving until reception improves. Keep the aerial clear. (Page 74)
	Signals from the vehicle's speed pulse are not being picked up properly.	Check that the cables are properly connected. If necessary, consult the dealer that installed the system.
	The navigation system may not be mounted securely in your vehicle.	Check that the navigation system is securely mounted and, if necessary, consult the dealer that installed the system.
	Your vehicle is operating in Simple hybrid mode.	Connect the speed signal input (pink lead wire) of the power cable correctly, and reset the 3D Hybrid Sensor memory ([**Learning Status**]).
	The navigation system is installed with an extreme angle exceeding the limitation of the installation angle.	Confirm the installation angle. (The navigation system must be installed within the allowed installation angle. For details, refer to "Installation Manual" and [**Installation Angle Setup**].) (Page 76)
	Indication of the position of your vehicle is misaligned after a U-turn or reversing.	Check whether or not the reverse gear signal input lead (violet) is connected properly. (The navigation system works properly without the lead connected, but positioning accuracy will be adversely affected.)

Appendix

The map continually reorients itself.	The travelling direction is always set to Heading Up.	Touch on the screen and change the map display.
The daylight display is used even when the vehicle lights are on.	[**Day**] is selected to [**Day/Night Display**].	Check [**Day/Night Display**] setting and make sure [**Automatic**] is selected. (Page 44)
	The orange/white lead is not connected.	Check the connection.
The display is very dim.	The vehicle's light is turned ON, and [**Automatic**] is selected on [**Day/Night Display**].	Read about [**Day/Night Display**] setting and, if desired, select [**Day**]. (Page 44)
	The vehicle cabin temperature is extremely low.	A Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) is used, and such displays tend to darken when cold. Wait for the vehicle to warm up.
	Picture quality adjustment of the display is not correct.	Adjust the picture quality. (Page 135)
	Display tilt is not at the proper setting.	Press and hold **EJECT** button to adjust the tilt.
No sounds are heard. The volume level will not rise.	The volume level is low.	Adjust the volume level.
	The attenuator or mute is on.	Turn the attenuator or mute off.
	The speaker lead is disconnected.	Check the connection.
The volume of beeps and navigation guidance cannot be adjusted.	You cannot adjust these parameters with **VOL** (▲/▼) button.	Turn the volume up or down with [**Volume**] in [**Settings**] menu.
Adjusting the volume of navigation guidance and beeps is not possible.	You cannot adjust them with **VOL** (▲/▼) button.	Turn the volume up or down according to [**Volume**] in [**Settings**] menu. (Page 72)
A strange sound is heard when the vehicle comes close to a certain place (e.g. Dog barking).	The sound for the entry of [**Address Book**] is set.	Set the sound setting of that entry to [**No Sound**]. (Page 58)
An alarm sounds when you approach the registered location and the set image pops up, regardless of whether [**Address Book Icon**] is set to [**Off**].	This is a normal operation and not a malfunction.	To turn off the sound output and image pop up, select [**No Sound**] and [**No Picture**].
Slope is not displayed on **Vehicle Dynamics** screen. "Inclination" does not move on **3D Calibration Status** screen.	The speed pulse lead is not connected.	Connect the speed pulse lead.
No sound, no voice.	has been set, or sound volume is reduced to 0.	Adjust the volume of the guidance or turn off. (Page 72)
The estimated time of arrival is different from the actual time of arrival.	This phenomenon is normal, because the estimated time of arrival is affected by various factors such as traffic jams or shortcuts.	The estimated time of arrival is an ideal value calculated based on the value set for [**Average Speed**] and the actual driving speed. The estimated time of arrival is only a reference value, and does not guarantee arrival at that time.

When importing an image, the file name does not appear correctly.	The name of the imported image file contains a diacritical mark (such as ä or è) or Cyrillic.	Letters with diacritical marks or Cyrillic letters cannot be recognised, so the file name may be garbled or not appear. Rename the file with standard Latin characters (A-Z, a-z) and numbers (0-9) and retry. If you want to use Cyrillic letters or letters with diacritical marks for file name, finalise the CD-R(-RW) with Joliet (Unicode) format. (Page 78)
	The name of the imported image file is not written in Unicode.	The file name may not appear correctly for file names written in conflicting character codes. Select Joliet for the file name conversion in the writing software and burn to the CD-R.
The person on the other end of the phone call cannot hear the conversation due to an echo.	The voice from the person on the other end of the phone call is output from the speakers and then picked up by the microphone again, creating an echo.	Use the following methods to reduce the echo: —Lower the volume on the receiver —Have both speakers pause slightly before speaking
The registered phone cannot be deleted.	Normally, the registered phone cannot be deleted.	• Overwrite the old registered phone with a new phone. • Clear [**Phone Settings**]. (Page 164)
CD or DVD playback is not possible.	The disc is inserted upside down.	Insert the disc with the label upward.
	The disc is dirty.	Clean disc.
	The disc is cracked or otherwise damaged.	Insert a normal, round disc.
	The files on the CD are an irregular file format.	Check the file format.
	The CD format cannot be played back.	Replace disc.
	The loaded disc is a type this system cannot play.	Check what type the disc is. (Also see “Handling and Care of the Disc” in the hardware manual and “Page 176” for more cautions about handling each type of media.)
No picture.	The handbrake lead is not connected or applied.	Connect a handbrake lead correctly, and apply the handbrake.
	Handbrake interlock is activated.	Park your vehicle in a safe place and apply the handbrake. (Page 18)
	[**AV Input**] setting is incorrect.	Please read the following page and set the setting correctly. (Page 131)
The audio skips.	The navigation system is not firmly secured.	Secure the navigation system firmly.
	Failure hard disk drive.	Consult your Pioneer dealer.

Appendix

“Rear display” picture disappears.	The setting for [**REAR SCREEN**] is incorrect.	Please read the following page and set the rear screen setting correctly. (Page 134)
	There was a problem with the “Rear display” or a faulty wiring connection, for example.	Check the “Rear display” and its connection.
	When the gearstick is in [R], the rear view camera images are displayed. (When [**MIRROR**] is selected in [**REAR SCREEN**] menu.)	Select [**DVD**] or [**AV**] in [**REAR SCREEN**] menu. When you move the gearstick to a position other than [R], the screen will be returned to the previous display.
	[**DVD-V Setup**] is carried out.	You can not display the video image to “Rear display” during [**DVD-V Setup**] menu.
The image on the “Rear Display” is in black and white, or not displayed correctly.	The Rear Display output from the navigation system is switched between the NTSC, PAL and SECAM system according to image. For some images, the image format may not match that of the “Rear Display”.	• Use a product (e.g. AVD-W7900) that has an NTSC/PAL/SECAM auto switch function for the “Rear Display” as well. • Manually switch between NTSC, PAL and SECAM for “Rear Display”.
Nothing is displayed and the touch panel keys cannot be used.	The setting for the rear view camera is incorrect.	Connect a rear view camera correctly.
	The gearstick was placed in [R] when the rear view camera was not connected.	Press **AV** button to return to the source display and then select the correct polarity setting for [**Camera Input**]. (Page 130)
	The back light of the LCD panel is turned off.	Press **V** button to turn on the back light.
Touch panel key is not respond or a different key is responding.	Touch panel keys deviate from the actual positions that respond to your touch for some reason.	Perform the touch panel calibration. (Page 167)
CD recording is not possible.	A disc that cannot be recorded, such as MP3 disc or DVD-video, is inserted.	A disc other than a normal music CD cannot be recorded.
CD recording doesn’t stop though the record progress indicator shows 100 %.	Music Library recording will be cancelled after playback of the current track is finished. (The recording mode stops at the interval of the tracks.)	Wait until the current track has ended or change the source manually.
The CD-TEXT information or the iPod song name does not appear correctly.	The CD-TEXT information or song information uses Cyrillic letters.	Cyrillic letters do not appear correctly.
No sounds are heard. The volume level will not rise.	Cables are not connected correctly.	Connect the cables correctly.
	The system is performing still, slow motion, or frame-by-frame playback with DVD-video.	There is no sound during still, slow motion, or frame-by-frame playback with DVD-video.
	The system is paused or performing, fast rewind or forward during the MP3 disc playback.	For an MP3, there is no sound on fast rewind or forward.
	“DTS” is selected for the DVD-Video disc sound track.	Switch to a non “DTS” sound track.

The icon ⃠ is displayed, and operation is not possible.	The operation is not compatible with the DVD's configuration.	This operation is not possible. (For example, the DVD playing does not feature that angle, audio system, subtitle language, etc.)
The picture stops (pauses) and the unit cannot be operated.	Reading of data has become impossible during DVD playback.	After touching ■ once, start playback once more.
The picture is stretched, the aspect is incorrect.	The aspect setting is incorrect for the display.	Select the appropriate setting for that image. (Page 130, Page 129)
A parental lock message is displayed and DVD playback is not possible.	Parental lock is on.	Turn parental lock off or change the level. (Page 129)
Parental lock for DVD playback cannot be cancelled.	The code number is incorrect.	Input the correct code number. (Page 129)
Playback is not with the audio language and subtitle language settings selected in [**DVD-V Setup**].	The DVD playing does not feature dialogue or subtitles in the language selected in [**DVD-V Setup**].	Switching to a selected language is not possible if the language selected in [**DVD-V Setup**] is not recorded on the disc.
Dialling is not possible because the touch panel keys for dialling are inactive.	Your phone is out of range for service.	Retry after entering within range for service.
	The connection between mobile phone and the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) (navigation system) cannot be established now.	Perform the connection process.
	The mobile phone is not registered to the navigation system yet.	To use the mobile phone featuring the Bluetooth wireless technology with this navigation system, the registration process is necessary.

When the screen is frozen...

Park your vehicle in a safe place, and cut off the engine. Turn the ignition key back to "Acc off". Then start the engine again, and turn the power to the navigation system back on. If this does not solve the problem, press **RESET** button on the navigation system.

Messages and How to React to Them

The following messages may be displayed by your navigation system.

❒ There are occasions when you may see error messages other than those shown here. In such a case, follow the instructions given on the display.

Appendix

Messages for navigation functions

Message	When	What to do (See)
Irregular speed pulse signal detected. Please power off the system and check the installation. Then, please re-boot the system and press "OK".	If the Navigation system does not receive the vehicle speed pulse.	Consult your Pioneer dealer.
Speed pulse not connected. Calibration will start without speed pulse. Accuracy is not fully ensured without speed pulse.	The speed signal input (pink lead wire) of the power cable is not connected.	To operate with 3D hybrid mode, connect the speed signal input (pink lead wire) of the power cable correctly. Although it can be operated with Simple hybrid mode without connecting the speed signal input, the precision of the positioning will be less accurate.
Vibration detected. Please power off the system and check the installation. Then, please re-boot the system and press "OK".	The navigation unit is installed in a place where it may be affected by a large vibration.	Re-install the navigation unit in a place where the unit will not be affected by vibration.
Direction of G sensor is not correct. Please power off the system and check the installation. Then, please re-boot the system and press "OK".	Direction of G sensor is set incorrectly.	See the Installation Manual and set the direction of the navigation unit correctly.
Gyro Sensor is not working properly. Please consult your dealer or Pioneer service centre.	Abnormal Gyrosensor output is detected.	Write down the error code shown on the screen. Turn off the power, and then contact your nearest Pioneer service facility.
Positioning is not possible due to the hardware. Please contact your dealer or Pioneer service centre.	The location display is not possible due to hardware failure.	Consult your dealer.
GPS antenna problem detected. Please contact your dealer or Pioneer service centre.	The location display is not possible due to failure of the GPS aerial.	Consult your dealer.
This function is currently unavailable.	The screen cannot be displayed with **Vehicle Dynamics** Display. The sensor has not been taught so the sensor information cannot be acquired.	If the sensor learning status reaches the Sensor Initialising, the system is ready to be used.
The vertical installation angle is changed. Gyro Sensor calibration is re-initialized.	If the mounting angle of the navigation unit has been changed.	The system initialises the sensor in order to operate it with the maximum performance and automatically starts re-learning.
Excess vertical installation angle detected. Please install the navigation unit correctly.	The navigation system is installed with an extreme angle exceeding the limitation of the installation angle.	Confirm the installation angle. (The navigation system must be installed within the allowed installation angle. For details refer to Installation Manual.)
Route calculation was not possible.	Route calculation has failed because of a malfunction in map data, software, or hardware.	• Change the destination. • Consult the Pioneer Local dealer if this message persists.

Route calculation not possible because destination is too far.	The destination is too far.	• Set a destination closer to the starting point. • Set one or more waypoints.
Route calculation not possible because destination is too close.	The destination or waypoint(s) are too close.	Set a destination and waypoint(s) farther from the starting point.
Route calculation not possible due to traffic regulations.	• The destination or waypoint(s) are in a Control Traffic Zone (CTR) and the route calculation is hampered. • Your vehicle is currently in a Control Traffic Zone (CTR) and the route calculation is hampered.	• Set a destination and waypoint(s) outside the CTR if you know where the restricted area is. • Try a destination or waypoint(s) away from the currently set points to some extent. • Drive your vehicle to an unrestricted area and reset the destination and waypoint(s).
Route calculation not possible because navigation cannot be provided around destination or starting point.	The destination, waypoint(s), or starting point are in an area where no road exists (e.g. a mountain) and the route calculation is impossible.	• Set a destination and waypoint(s) on roads. • Reset the destination after you drive the vehicle to any road.
Route to destination cannot be calculated.	The destination or waypoint(s) are in an isolated island, etc. without a ferry and the route calculation is impossible. If there is no road connected to your starting point or destination, this message will appear.	Change the destination.
• Ferry could not be avoided. **• Toll roads could not be avoided.** **• Motorway could not be avoided.** **• Ferry, toll roads and motorways could not be avoided.** **• Ferry and toll roads could not be avoided.** **• Toll roads and motorways could not be avoided.** **• Ferry and motorways could not be avoided.**	These messages appear when a ferry route, toll roads, or motorways are included in the route to the destination or waypoints even though a route is set to avoid them. You can identify these condition by the icons.	If the current route is not desired, set destination or waypoints that do not pass through a ferry route, toll roads, or motorways. (Page 27)
This area does not contain any POI's of the selected type.	Facilities of the selected category do not exist in the surrounding areas.	Use another search method or move to another location and perform **Vicinity Search** again.
Failed to make the route profile.	In rare cases, a route calculation error may occur.	• Retry. • Consult the Pioneer Local dealer if this message persists.
There is no pictures folder. Please create /Pictures/ folder and store JPEG files in that Folder.	Cannot load the image because **Pictures** folder is not found in the inserted disc.	Use the appropriate data after reading “Page 78”.
Data Read error.	Failed to read the data because the CD-R is damaged or dirty. Or, the pick-up lens of the DVD drive is dirty.	Try re-reading the data by inserting a clean CD-R. Clean the pick-up lens with a commercially available cleaning kit for DVD, then try to reading again.
	Pictures folder exists on the CD-R but no data in JPEG format exists.	Use the appropriate data after reading “Page 78”.

Appendix

JPEG file is corrupt.	The data is damaged or an attempt was made to set a JPEG image that was not made to specifications as the background picture.	Use the appropriate data after reading “Page 78”.
Connection failed.	The mobile phone's Bluetooth wireless technology is turned off.	Turn the target phone's Bluetooth wireless technology on.
	The mobile phone is paired (connected) with another device.	Cancel the pairing (connection) and retry.
	Rejection has been received from the mobile phone.	Operate the target phone and accept the connection request from the navigation system. (Furthermore, check the connection settings on your mobile phone.)
	The target mobile phone can not be found.	Check whether your mobile phone is turned off and, whether the distance to your mobile phone is too far.
	Registration step has been successful but connection has failed for some reason.	Retry the registration and if a connection still cannot be established, try connecting using your mobile phone.
Registration failed.	The mobile phone's Bluetooth wire less technology is turned off during the registration step.	Keep turning the target phone's Bluetooth wireless technology on during the registration.
	Rejection by the mobile phone has received.	Operate the target phone and accept the registration request from the navigation system. (Furthermore, check the connection settings on your mobile phone.)
	Registration step has failed for some reason.	Retry the registration and if the registration still fails, try registering using your mobile phone.
Automatic connection in progress. Please try again later.	If you try to perform another operation during automatic connection by the system.	• Wait for a while and retry. • Establish that connection temporarily and retry that later.
Automatic connection in progress. Please try manually later.	If you try to connect another phone during automatic connection by the system.	Establish that connection temporarily and retry it later.
Could not find any available phone.	No available phone exists in the surroundings when the system searches for the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology for registration.	• Turn the target phone's Bluetooth wireless technology on. • Check whether your mobile phone is turned off and, whether the distance to your mobile phone is too far.
Bluetooth unit error. It is not possible to find any mobile phones.	If the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is disconnected from this navigation system or Bluetooth unit carries out another processing when the system search the mobile phone featuring Bluetooth wireless technology for registration.	• Check the connection and retry. • Establish that connection temporarily and retry later.
Bluetooth unit error. The device name could not be set.	If the Bluetooth unit (sold separately) is disconnected from this navigation system or the Bluetooth unit carries out another process when you change the device name.	• Check the connection and retry. • Establish that connection temporarily and retry later.

Registration is not available.	If you try to perform another operation immediately after connection failure.	Wait for a while and retry.
Reading failed.	If you transferred the data from your mobile phone in a format can not be received with navigation system.	• Select just a suitable item, format, and then retry. • Connect your mobile phone again and retry.
Calibration failed. Please refer to the owner's manual.	The touch panel calibration has not been carried out with appropriate steps.	Please read the instruction of touch panel calibration and retry. (Page 167)
The HDD is not connected.	Failure of the built-in hard disk drive has occurred, such as internal electrical problem or file system error.	Consult your dealer.
Cannot use HDD.	Failure of the built-in hard disk drive has occurred, such as internal electrical problem or file system error.	Consult your dealer.
There is no applicable program.	Failure of the built-in hard disk drive has occurred, such as internal electrical problem or file system error.	Consult your dealer.
The HDD cannot be operated due to excessive heat. Please move your vehicle to a safe place and turn the power off until the temperature goes down.	Hard disk drive cannot run due to high temperature.	Park your vehicle to safe place, turn the ignition switch off, and wait until the temperature inside the vehicle drops.

Messages for Audio Functions

When problems occur in the audio source, a message may appears on the display. Refer to the table below to identify the problem, then take the suggested corrective action. If the error persists, contact your dealer or your nearest Pioneer Service Centre.

Built-in DVD drive

Message	When	What to do (See)
Unreadable disc	If you try to use a disc which is incompatible with this system.	Insert a suitable disc.
	If you insert a disc upside down.	Insert the disc with the label upward.
	If the disc is dirty.	Clean the disc.
	If the disc is cracked or otherwise damaged.	Insert a normal, round disc.
	Mechanical failure of DVD drive occurs.	Consult your Pioneer dealer.
Playback error. Please remove the disc.	Electrical or mechanical error has occurred.	Press **RESET** button. (Also see the Hardware Manual.) (Page 164)
Region code error	The disc does not have the same region number as the navigation system.	Replace the DVD-Video with one bearing the correct region number.

Appendix

Playback error due to irregular temperature. Please remove the disc.	The temperature of the built-in DVD drive exceeds the operating limits.	Park your vehicle in safe place, turn the ignition switch off, and wait until the built-in DVD drive's temperature returns to within normal operating limits.
ATTENTION! Viewing of front seat video source while driving is strictly prohibited.	Handbrake interlock is activated.	Park your vehicle in the safe place and apply the handbrake. (Page 18)
Search error	The title number, chapter number, time, or 10 key command that you enter in [**10Key Search**] do not exist. (This message will appear when the DVD drive cannot accept that command.)	Enter the available numbers or 10 key command or use another search method.

Hard disk drive (Music Library)

Message	When	What to do (See)
This CD cannot be recorded	If you insert a CD which prohibits second-generation copies or duplicate.	Use another CD and retry.
• Recording error. Switching to CD playback mode **• Recording error. Recording is stopped** **• The recording was unstable. Restart the recording from the beginning of the track.**	If recording can not be carried out due to continuous skipping on certain part of the disc because the disc is dirty, scratched, or otherwise damaged, the pick-up lens of the DVD drive is dirty, or extreme vibration occurs continuously.	• Clean the disc and retry. • Clean the pick-up lens with a commercially available cleaning kit for DVD, then retry. • Retry in vibration-free condition.
Exceeded playlist maximum. No more playlists can be recorded.	If you try to record a new CD but the maximum number of playlists are already recorded. (The album playlist can be stores up to 400.)	Delete some playlists and retry.
Playback error. Music Library cannot be played	The music library component is abnormal.	Consult your dealer.
This playlist cannot store more than 99 tracks.	If you try to add tracks but **My Mix** or **My Favorite** playlists are maximum number. (**My Mix** and **My Favorite** playlists can store the tracks up to 99.)	Delete some tracks and retry.
This track cannot be added to MyMix.	The music library component is abnormal.	Consult your dealer.
Name cannot be used for voice recognition. Try again.	Some invalid characters have been entered and the system cannot convert it to the appropriate pronunciation.	Enter different characters so that the system can pronounce it.
Single recording mode will only record the first track of CD	Recording tracks other than the first track of CD when the recording mode is [**Single**].	When you set [**Single**] in [**REC Mode**], the system only can record the first track of CD. Set [**Auto**] or [**Manual**] in [**REC Mode**] and retry. (Page 133)
HDD is full. This CD cannot be recorded	There is no free space for recording in the hard disk drive.	Delete some tracks or playlists and try again if you want to record that CD.

Unable to select appropriate Track info due to multiple entries in the database.	Some corresponding data is found in the Gracenote® Database, but the system cannot select one to append a title.	Enter the title manually, or try to retrieve the title by touching [**Update Title**].
All artist names in the playlist have been deleted because no character has been entered. Do you want to proceed?	If you try to delete the artist name entirely. The artist will not be displayed in the artist group and artist name on the information plate also will not be displayed.	If you enter the artist name again, the artist name appears.

Other sources

Message	When	What to do (See)
Search failed.	iPod is preparing playback. Therefore, the operation is invalid now.	Wait until [**Ready**] disappears and try the operation.

Appendix

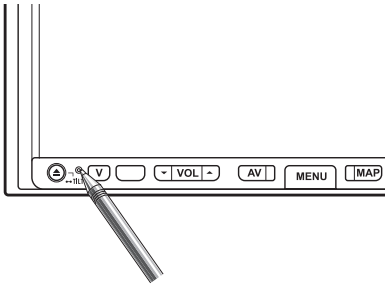
Returning the Navigation System to the Default or Factory Settings

You can return settings or recorded contents to the default or factory settings. There are four methods to clear user data, and the situations and the cleared contents are different for each method. For the contents that are cleared in each method, see the list presented later.

❒ The map data and the system data are not cleared from the hard disk drive by any clearing method.

Method 1: RESET button

Pressing **RESET** button clears almost all settings of the audio function.



The system becomes the same state when the battery of the vehicle is removed or the yellow lead of the navigation system is disconnected.

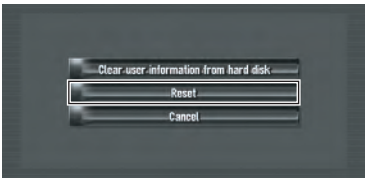
Method 2: [Restore Factory Settings]

Clears some items in [**Map**] menu and in [**Settings**] menu.

➲ For details, refer to *Restoring the Default Setting* on page 80

Method 3: [Reset] on start-up

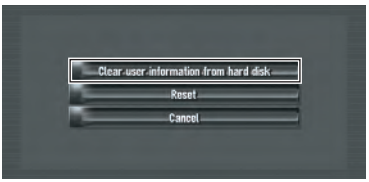
Clears the setting values stored in the hard disk drive.



➲ For details, refer to *If system errors frequently occur* on page 167

Method 4: [Clear user information from hard disk] on start-up

Clears all user data (including Music Library) stored in the hard disk drive.



➲ For details, refer to *Completely returning the navigation system to the initial state* on page 167

Appendix

Setting items to be deleted

The items to be deleted vary depending on the reset method. The items listed in the following table return to the default or factory settings. The items not listed below will be retained.

However, if you carry out [Clear user information from hard disk], all the settings related to the navigation function including the items not listed below are deleted.

—: The setting will be retained.

✓: The setting will be cleared and returned to the default or factory settings.

Navigation functions		Method 1	Method 2	Method 3	Method 4
Map function	View mode and scale setting on the map	—	—	✓	✓
	Direction of the map	—	—	✓	✓
	Last cursor position on the map screen	—	—	✓	✓
Route Setting	Current route	—	—	✓	✓
	Guidance state of the current route	—	—	✓	✓
	Vehicle position information	—	—	✓	✓
	Route conditions	—	✓	✓	✓
[**Destination**] menu	Auto fill-in function for cities and streets	—	—	✓	✓
	Point registered in [**Address Book**]	—	—	—	✓
	Sorting order selected in [**Address Book**]	—	—	✓	✓
[**Info/Phone**] menu	[**Phone Settings**] ([**Phone Menu**])	—	—	✓	✓
	[**Phone Book**], [**Dial Favourites**], [**Dialed Numbers**], [**Received Calls**] ([**Phone Menu**])	—	—	—	✓
[**Map**] menu	[**Short-Cut Selection**],[**View Mode**]	—	—	✓	✓
	[**Displayed Info**], [**Overlay POI**], [**Day/Night Display**], [**AV Guide Mode**], [**Road Colour**]	—	✓	✓	✓

[**Settings**] menu	[**Language**] ([**Regional Settings**]), [**Time**] ([**Regional Settings**]), [**Installation Angle Setup**] ([**Hardware**]), [**Defined Locations**], [**Modify Current Location**], [**Background Picture Setting**]	—	—	✓	✓
	Items other than above	—	✓	✓	✓
	[**3D Calibration Status**] ([**Hardware**])	—	—	—	—
[**Vehicle Dynamics**]	Right and left gauge type, [**Adjust Style**]	—	—	✓	✓
[**Audio Settings**]	All items	✓	—	—	—
[**System Settings**]	[**Mute Set**], [**Clock DISP**], [**REC Mode**]	✓	—	✓	✓
	Other items	✓	—	—	—

Audio functions		**Method 1**	**Method 2**	**Method 3**	**Method 4**
Music Library [**LIBRARY**]	Repeat, Random settings	✓	—	✓	✓
	Track data	—	—	—	✓
	Playlist	—	—	—	✓
	Last playback position	—	—	—	✓
[**DVD**]	All settings	✓	—	—	—
[**CD**]	All settings	✓	—	—	—
[**ROM**](**MP3**)	All settings	✓	—	—	—
[**FM**]	Preset memory and the other settings	✓	—	—	—
[**AM**]	Preset memory and the other settings	✓	—	—	—
[**TV**]	Preset memory and the other settings	✓	—	—	—
[**REAR SCREEN**]	Rear Screen setting	✓	—	—	—
Others	**Picture Adjust**	✓	—	—	—
	Display Tilt	✓	—	—	—

If system errors frequently occur

If system errors frequently occur and the power to the navigation system turns off, inappropriate content may have been recorded in the memory or the hard disk drive. In such a case, normal operations may be restored by clearing the setting values stored in the hard disk drive.

1 Start the engine.
After a few moments, the start-up screen comes on for a few seconds.

2 Touch and hold MAP button while the start-up screen is displayed.
"Clear memory screen" appears.

3 Touch [Reset].

4 Touch [Yes].
The setting values stored in the hard disk drive return to the default or factory settings. After that, the navigation splash screen appears.

Completely returning the navigation system to the initial state

To return the entire navigation system to the default or factory settings, initialise the navigation system in the following order:

1 Press **RESET** button on the hardware.
2 Initialise the user data area on the hard disk drive.
3 Clear the learned data in the sensor.

1 Turn the ignition switch off.

2 Press RESET button.

3 Start the engine.
After a few moments, the start-up screen comes on for a few seconds.

4 Touch and hold MAP button while the start-up screen is displayed.
"Clear memory screen" appears.

5 Touch [Clear user information from hard disk].

❒ This reset operation clears all music data recorded in the music library. Note that the cleared data cannot be restored.

6 Touch [Yes].
The user area in the hard disk drive is initialised. After that, the navigation system restarts.

7 Press MENU button and then touch [Settings].
The setting menu appears.

8 Touch [Hardware] and then touch [3D Calibration Status].

9 Touch [Learning Status] and then touch [Reset All].

Adjusting the Response Positions of the Touch Panels (Touch Panel Calibration)

If you feel that the touch panel keys on the screen deviate from the actual positions that respond to your touch, adjust the response positions of the touch panel. There are two adjustment methods: 4-point adjustment, in which you touch four corners of the screen; and 16-point adjustment, in which you make fine-adjustments on the entire screen.

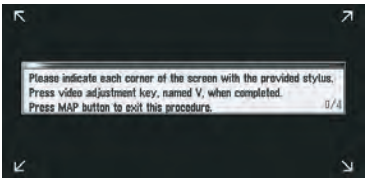
❒ Make sure to use the supplied stylus for adjustment, and gently touch the screen. If you press the touch panel forcefully, the touch panel may be damaged. Do not use a sharp pointed tool such as a ballpoint pen or a mechanical pen. Otherwise the screen is damaged.

Stylus (supplied with navigation system)

1 Press V button.
The Picture Adjust screen appears.

2 Press and hold V button for two seconds or more.
The 4-point touch panel adjustment screen appears.

3 Touch and hold each of the arrows on the four corners of the screen with the touch panel adjustment pen.
Hold the pen on the arrow until each one of the four arrows turns red.


Please indicate each corner of the screen with the provided stylus.
Press video adjustment key, named V, when completed.
Press MAP button to exit this procedure.
0/4

4 Press V button.
The adjusted position data is saved.
- ❒ Do not turn off the engine while saving the adjusted position data.
- ❒ Press **MAP** button to complete the 4-point adjustment.

5 Press V button.
The 16-point touch panel adjustment screen appears.

6 Gently touch the centre of + mark displayed on the screen with the touch panel adjustment pen.
After you touch all marks, the adjusted position data is saved.
- ❒ Do not turn off the engine while saving the adjusted position data.
- ❒ Press **V** button to return to the previous adjustment position.
- ❒ To cancel the adjustment, press **MAP** button.

7 Press MAP button.
The adjustment is complete.
- ❒ If touch panel adjustment cannot be performed properly, consult your local Pioneer dealer.■

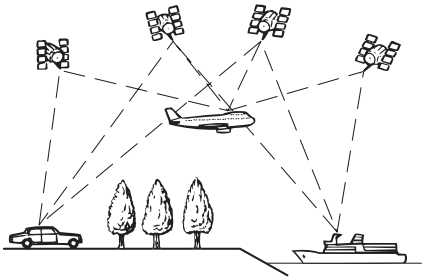
Positioning Technology

The navigation system accurately measures your current location by combining the positioning by GPS and by Dead Reckoning.

Positioning by GPS

The Global Positioning System (GPS) uses a network of satellites orbiting the Earth. Each of the satellites, which orbit at a height of 21 000 km, continually broadcasts radio signals giving time and position information. This ensures that signals from at least three can be picked up from any open area on the earth's surface.

The accuracy of the GPS information depends on how good the reception is. When the signals are strong and reception is good, GPS can determine latitude, longitude and altitude for accurate positioning in three dimensions. But if signal quality is poor, only two dimensions, latitude and longitude, can be obtained and positioning errors are somewhat greater.



Positioning by dead reckoning

The 3D Hybrid Sensor in the navigation system also calculates your position. The current location is measured by detecting driving distance with the speed pulse, the turning direction with the Gyrosensor and inclination of the road with the G sensor.
The 3D Hybrid Sensor can even calculate changes of altitude, and corrects for discrepancies in the distance travelled caused by driving along winding roads or up slopes.
Also, the navigation system learns the driving conditions and stores information in the memory; thus, as you drive more, the precision of the positioning becomes more accurate.
The method of positioning changes as follows depending on whether the speed pulse of your vehicle is detected or not:

3D hybrid mode

This is active when the speed pulse is detected. Inclination of a street can be detected.

Simple hybrid mode

When the speed pulse is not detected, positioning is performed in this mode. Only horizontal movement is detected, so it becomes less accurate. Also, when the positioning by GPS is not available, such as when your vehicle enters a long tunnel, the discrepancy between your actual and calculated position may become bigger.

How do GPS and dead reckoning work together?

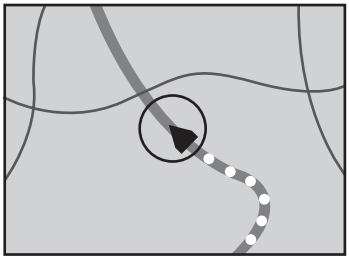
For maximum accuracy, your navigation system continually compares GPS data with your estimated position as calculated from the data of 3D Hybrid Sensor. However, if only the data from the 3D Hybrid Sensor is available for a long period, positioning errors are gradually compounded until the estimated position becomes unreliable. For this reason, whenever GPS signals are available, they are matched with the data of the 3D Hybrid Sensor and used to correct it for improved accuracy.
To ensure maximum accuracy, the dead reckoning system learns with experience. By comparing the position it estimates with your actual position as obtained using GPS, it can correct for various types of error, such as tyre wear and the rolling motion of your vehicle. As you drive, the dead reckoning system gradually gathers more data, learns more, and the accuracy of its estimates gradually increases. So, after you have driven some distance, you can expect your position as shown on the map to show fewer errors.

- If you use chains on your wheels for winter driving or put on the spare wheel, errors may suddenly increase because of difference in wheel diameter. The system detects the fact that the tyre diameter has changed, and automatically replaces the value for calculating distance.
- If ND-PG1 is used or if your vehicle is operating in Simple hybrid mode, the distance calculation value cannot be replaced automatically.

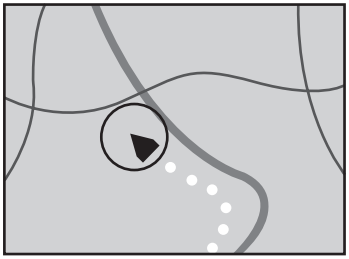
Appendix

Map matching

As mentioned, the GPS and dead reckoning systems used by this navigation system are susceptible to certain errors. Their calculations may, on occasion, place you in a location on the map where no road exists. In this situation, the processing system understands that vehicles travel only on roads, and can correct your position by adjusting it to a nearby road. This is called map matching.



With map matching



Without map matching

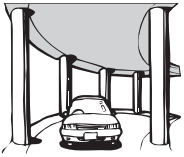
Handling Large Errors

Positioning errors are kept to a minimum by combining GPS, Dead Reckoning, and map matching. However, in some situations, these functions may not work properly, and the error may become bigger.

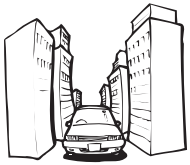
When the positioning by GPS is impossible

- If signals cannot be received from more than two GPS satellites, GPS positioning does not take place.
- In some driving conditions, signals from GPS satellites may not reach your vehicle. In this case, it is impossible for the system to use GPS positioning.

In tunnels or enclosed parking garages



Under elevated roads or similar structures



When driving among high buildings

When driving through a dense forest or tall trees

- If a car phone or mobile phone is used near the GPS aerial, GPS reception may be lost temporarily.

- Do not cover the GPS aerial with spray paint or car wax, because this may block the reception of GPS signals. Snow buildup can also degrade the signals, so keep the aerial clear.

❒ If, for any reason, GPS signals cannot be received, learning and error correction are not possible. If GPS positioning has been operating for only a short time, your vehicle's actual position and the current location mark on the map may diverge considerably. Once GPS reception is restored, accuracy will be recovered.

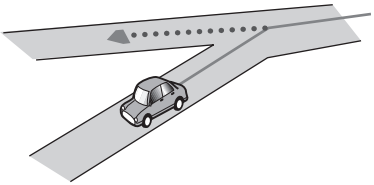
Vehicles that Cannot Obtain Speed Pulse Data

❒ The speed pulse data comes from the speed sensing circuit. The location of this speed sensing circuit depends on your vehicle model. In some cases, it is impossible to make a connection to it, and in such a case we recommend that ND-PG1 speed pulse generator (sold separately) be used.

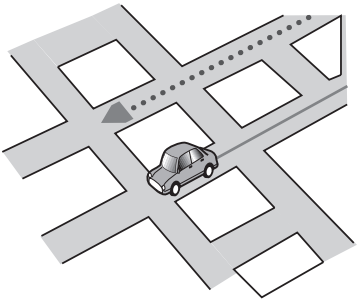
Conditions Likely to Cause Noticeable Positioning Errors

For various reasons such as the state of the road you are travelling on and the state of reception of the GPS signal, the actual position of your vehicle may differ from the position displayed on the map screen.

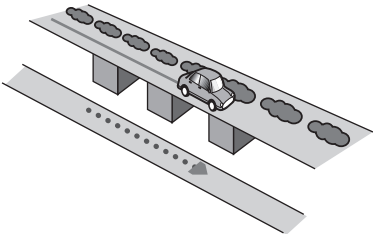
- If you make a slight turn.



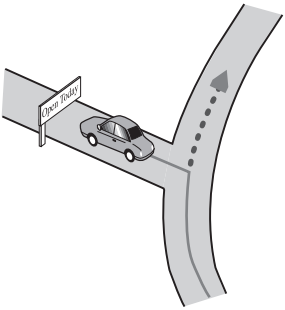
- If there is a parallel road.



- If there is another road very nearby, such as in the case of an elevated motorway.

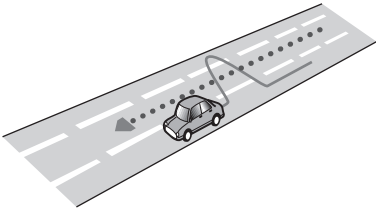


- If you take a recently opened road that is not on the map.

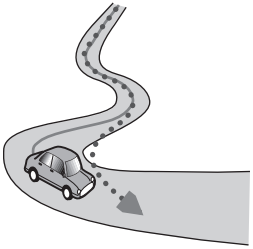


Appendix

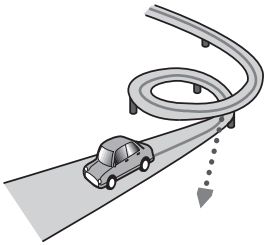
- If you drive in zig-zags.



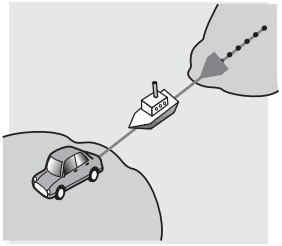
- If the road has connected hairpin bends.



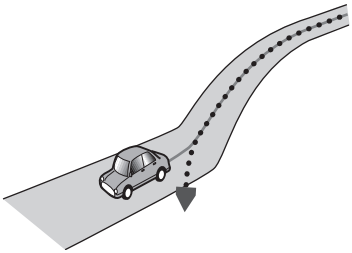
- If there is a loop or similar road configuration.



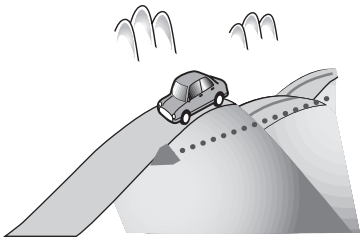
- If you take a ferry.



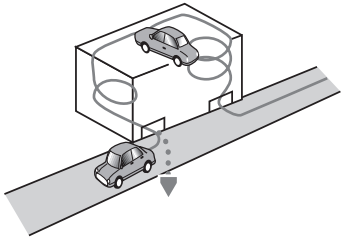
- If you are driving on a long, straight road or a gently curving road.



- If you are on a steep mountain road with many height changes.

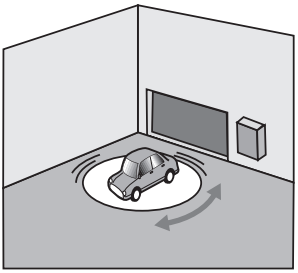


- If you enter or exit a multi-storey car park or similar using a spiral ramp.



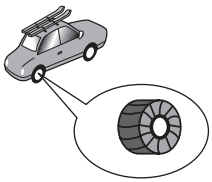
Appendix

- If your vehicle is turned on a turntable or similar structure.

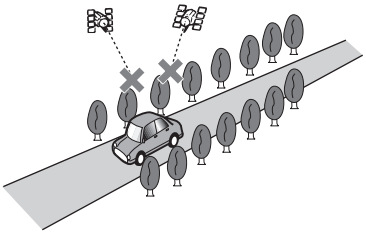


- If your vehicle's wheels spin, such as on a rough track or in snow.

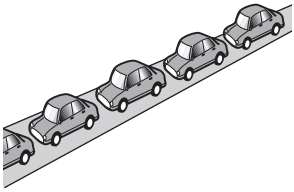
- If you put on chains, or change your tyres for ones with a different size.



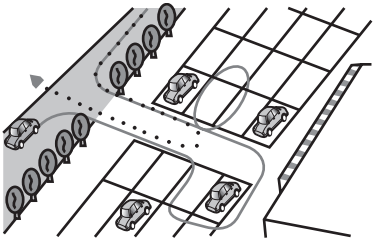
- If trees or other obstacles block the GPS signals for a considerable period.



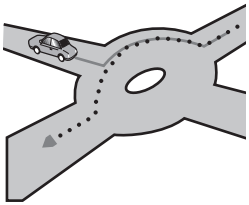
- If you drive very slowly, or in a start-and-stop manner, as in a traffic jam.



- If you join the road after driving around a large car park.



- When you go round a roundabout.



- When starting driving immediately after starting the engine.
- If you turn your navigation system on while driving.

Some types of vehicles may not output a speed signal while driving at just a few kilometres per hour. In such a case, the current location of your vehicle may not be displayed correctly while in a traffic jam or in a car park. ■

Appendix

When the Hard Disk Drive is Disconnected

If there is no hard disk drive because of repair or service, you can operate only the Radio source without the hard disk drive.
The following screen also may appear because the hard disk drive can not run due to low temperature. In such a case, park your vehicle in a safe place and turn the ignition switch off. After the temperature inside the vehicle returns to normal, turn the ignition switch on.

Only the following operations are available. Other functions cannot be operated.

- Only the FM and AM sources can be operated. (Preset station select cannot be operated.)
- If the selected source before ejecting the hard disk drive is [**AV**], the [**AV INPUT**] source is available on “Rear display”. (If the selected source is [**DVD**], nothing is output to “Rear display”. If the selected source is [**MIRROR**], the same image as “Front display” is output to “Rear display”.)
- Rear view camera is available only when the vehicle is backing up. ([**Rear View**] is not available.) ▣

Route Setting Information

Route search specifications

Your navigation system sets a route to your destination by applying certain built-in rules to the map data. This section provides some useful information about how a route is set.

CAUTION

When a route is calculated, the route and voice guidance for the route is automatically set. Also, for day or time traffic regulations, only information about traffic regulations at the time when the route was calculated is shown. One-way streets and street closures may not be taken into consideration. For example, if a street is open during the morning only, but you arrive later, it would be against the traffic regulations so you cannot drive along the set route. When driving, please follow the actual traffic signs. Also, the system may not know some traffic regulations.

- The calculated route is one example of the route to your destination decided by the navigation system whilst taking the type of streets or traffic regulations into account. It is not necessarily an optimum route. (In some cases, you may not be able to set the streets you want to pass. If you need to pass a certain street, set the waypoint on that street.)
- The route set by your navigation system may not use the streets known to local drivers, such as small streets or special roads.
- Some route options may become the same route. If waypoints are set, only one route is calculated.
- If the destination is too far, there may be instances where the route cannot be set. (If you want to set a long-distance route going across several areas, set waypoints along the way.)
- During voice guidance, turns and intersections from the motorway are announced. However, if you pass intersections, turns, and other guide points in rapid succession, some may not be announced.
- It is possible that guidance may direct you off a motorway and then back on again.

- In some cases, the route may require you to travel in the opposite direction to your current heading. In such cases, you are instructed to turn around, so please turn around safely by following the actual traffic rules.
- In some cases, guidance may direct you past your destination and then indicate a U-turn to get back to it.
- In some cases, a route may begin on the opposite side of a railway or river from your actual current location. If this happens, drive towards your destination for a while, and try route calculation again.
- There may be instances when the starting point and the destination point are not on the highlighted route.
- The number of roundabout exits displayed on the screen may differ from the actual number of roads.

Auto Reroute

- Auto Reroute is used when you deviate more than 30m from the route.
- The Auto Reroute function does not work in the following cases:
  - — when your vehicle is not on a street
  - — when you are too close to your destination
  - — when your vehicle is on a ferry
  - — when driving on a road inside a facility
  - — when driving on a roundabout
  - — when driving on the routes are described in “Roads not used in calculations”
- The system assumes the driver deviated either intentionally or inadvertently from the route and searches for another route (intelligent rerouting). Depending on the situation, the system may search a new route that does not return to the original one.

Route highlighting

- Once set, the route is highlighted in bright green or light blue on the map.
- The immediate vicinity of your starting point and destination may not be highlighted, and neither will areas with particularly complex road layouts. Consequently, the route may appear to be cut off on the display, but voice guidance will continue.

Roads not used in calculations

Even though displayed on screen, the following roads are not included in route calculations.

- Walkways
- Public vehicle only
- Non access road

➲ For details, refer to *Viewing the Map Colour Legend* on page 44

Tracking

- Your navigation system marks your course on the map in certain increments. This is called tracking. It is handy when you want to check a route travelled without guidance or if returning along a complex route.
- A maximum of about 250 km (155 miles) is marked and, as you travel beyond this limit, tracking marks are erased in order from the most distant. Tracking display shows about 160 km (100 miles) tracking of your vehicle with white dots.

➲ For details, refer to *Setting the Item on the Map Screen* on page 41

Displaying POI

Points of Interest (POI) that can be displayed on the enlarged map of the intersection or [**Driver's View**] (left screen) are only the special Points of Interest (POI) that contain the position information. Not all of Points of Interests (POI) are displayed. ■

Appendix

Detail Information for Playable Media

DVD discs and other DVD media types

- It may not be possible to use certain functions with some DVD-Video discs.
- It may not be possible to play back some DVD video discs.
- When DVD-R/DVD-RW discs are used, playback is possible only for discs that have been finalised.
- When DVD-R/DVD-RW discs are used, playback is possible only for discs that have been recorded in Video format (video mode). It is not possible to play back DVD-R/-RW discs which have been recorded in Video Recording format (VR mode).
- It may not be possible to play back DVD-R/DVD-RW discs that have been recorded in Video format (video mode) because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, scratches or condensation on the lens of this product.
- It is not possible to play back general DVD-ROM discs or DVD-RAM discs. Only DVD-ROM discs authorised by Pioneer can be read.
- Playback of discs recorded on a personal computer may not be possible depending on the environment and the application settings. Please record with the correct format. (For details, contact the manufacturer of the application.)

About playing DualDisc

- DualDiscs are two-sided discs that have a recordable CD for audio on one side and a recordable DVD for video on the other.
- Playback of the DVD side is possible with this unit. However, since the CD side of DualDiscs is not physically compatible with the general CD standard, it may not be possible to play the CD side with this navigation system.
- Frequent loading and ejecting of a DualDisc may result in scratches on the disc.
- Serious scratches can lead to playback problems on this navigation system. In some cases, a DualDisc may become stuck in the disc loading slot and will not eject. To prevent this, we recommend you refrain from using DualDisc with this navigation system.
- Please refer to the manufacturer for more detailed information about DualDiscs.

About AVCHD recorded discs

- This unit is not compatible with discs recorded in AVCHD (Advanced Video Codec High Definition) format. Do not insert AVCHD discs. If inserted, the disc may not be ejected.

CD-R/CD-RW discs

- When CD-R/CD-RW discs are used, playback is possible only for discs that have been finalised.
- It may not be possible to play back CD-R/CD-RW discs recorded on a music CD recorder or a personal computer because of disc characteristics, scratches or dirt on the disc, or dirt, scratches or condensation on the lens of this product.
- Playback of discs recorded on a personal computer may not be possible, depending on the environment and the application settings. Please record with the correct format. (For details, contact the manufacturer of the application.)
- Playback of CD-R/CD-RW discs may become impossible with direct exposure to sunlight, high temperatures, or depending on the storage conditions in the vehicle.
- Titles and other text information recorded on a CD-R/CD-RW disc may not be displayed by this product (in the case of audio data (CD-DA)).

- If you insert a CD-RW disc into this product, it will take more time to play back than when you insert a conventional CD or CD-R disc.
- Read the precautions with CD-R/CD-RW discs before using them.

MP3 files

- When naming an MP3 file, add the corresponding filename extension (.mp3).
- This navigation system plays back files with the filename extension (.mp3) as MP3 files. To prevent noise and malfunctions, do not use this extension for files other than MP3 files.
- MP3 is short for MPEG Audio Layer 3 and refers to an audio compression technology standard.
- This product allows playback of MP3 files on CD-ROM, CD-R and CD-RW discs. Recorded discs can be played back if they are compatible with level 1 and level 2 of ISO9660 and with the Romeo and Joliet file system.
- It is possible to play back multi-session compatible recorded discs.
- MP3 files are not compatible with packet write data transfer.
- The maximum number of characters for the file and folder name is 32 characters, including extension (.mp3). However the navigation system uses proportional font. Therefore, the number of the characters that you can display varies according to the width of each character.
- When playing discs with both MP3 files and audio data (CD-DA), such as CD-EXTRA and MIXED-MODE CDs, both types can be played only by switching the mode between MP3 and CD-DA.
- The folder selection sequence for playback and other operations is the writing sequence used by the writing software. For this reason, the expected sequence at the time of playback may not coincide with the actual playback sequence. However, there also are some writing software that permit the setting of the playback order.
- Some audio CDs contain tracks that merge into one another without a pause. When these discs are converted to MP3 files and burned to a CD-R/CD-RW/CD-ROM, the files will be played back on this player with a short pause between each one, regardless of the length of the pause between tracks on the original audio CD.
- Files are compatible with the ID3 Tag Ver. 1.0 and Ver. 1.1 formats for displaying album (disc title), track (track title) and artist (track artist).
- The emphasis function is valid only when MP3 files of 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz and 48 kHz frequencies are played back. (16 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 24 kHz, 32 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 48 kHz sampling frequencies can be played back.)
- There is no m3u playlist compatibility.
- There is no compatibility with the MP3i (MP3 interactive) or MP3 PRO formats.
- The sound quality of MP3 files generally improves with an increased bit rate. This product can play recordings with bit rates from 8 kbps to 320 kbps, but in order to be able to enjoy sound of a certain quality, we recommend only using discs recorded with a bit rate of at least 128 kbps.
- Playing MP3 file on the DVD-R (-RW) is not supported.

About folders and MP3 files

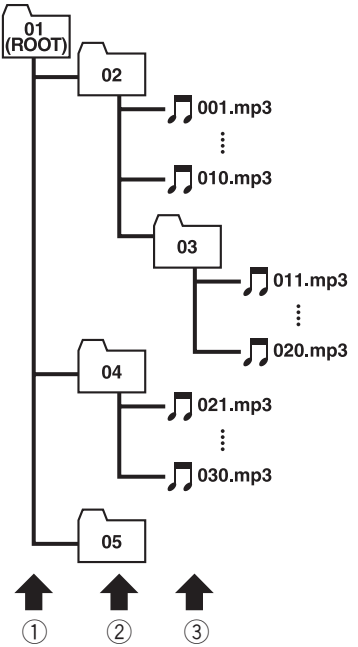
An outline of a CD-ROM with MP3 files on it is shown below. Subfolders are shown as folders in the folder currently selected.

❒ The following figure is an example of the tier structure in the CD. The numbers in the figure indicate the order in which folder numbers are assigned and the order to be played back.

⌐ Indicates the order in which folder numbers are assigned.

Appendix

Indicates each file. The number is assigned in the order of the track to be played back.



① **First tier**
② **Second tier**
③ **Third tier**

Notes

- This product assigns folder numbers. The user can not assign folder numbers.
- If you are using a folder that does not contain an MP3 file, the folder itself will display but you will not be able to see any files in the folder.
- MP3 files in up to 8 tiers of folders can be played back. However, there is a delay when starting playback on discs with numerous tiers. For this reason we recommend creating discs with no more than 2 tiers.
- It is possible to play back up to 253 folders on one disc.

Appendix

Display Information

[Destination] menu

	Page
Address Search	23
Return Home	50, 53
Go to	50, 53
POI Search	46
Route Overview	28
Address Book	51, 53
Destination History	51, 59
Postal Code Search	50
Vicinity Search	48
Cancel Route	28

[Info/Phone] menu

	Page
Phone Menu	
Dial	65
Phone Book	68
Dial Favourites	66, 68
Read Bus. Card	67
Dialed Numbers	65, 70
Received Calls	65, 70
Phone Settings	62

[Map] menu

	Page
Displayed Info	
Close Up View	41
Tracking Display	41
Show Mute Button	41
Second Maneuver Arrow	41
Bluetooth Connected	41
Address Book Icon	41
3D Landmark	41
Short-Cut Selection	42
Overlay POI	43
Map Legend	44
View Mode	44
Day/Night Display	44
AV Guide Mode	44
Road Colour	45

[Settings] menu

	Page
Volume	72
Regional Settings	

Appendix

Language	72
Time	73
Keyboard	73
km / mile	73
Average Speed	74
Hardware	
Connection Status	74
3D Calibration Status	75
Installation Angle Setup	76
Service Info Screen	76
Hard Disk Info	76
Defined Locations	53
Background Picture Setting	77
Demo Mode	79
Modify Current Location	79
Restore Factory Settings	80
Route Condition	29
Avoid Toll Road	29
Avoid Ferry	29
Avoid Motorway	29
Time restrictions	29
Learning Route	29
: **Registration**	54
: **Vicinity Search**	49
: **Overlay POI**	43
: **Volume**	72
: **Phone Book**	65, 68
: **Dial Favourite 1** to **Dial Favourite 5**	66, 68
: **Whole Route Overview**	30
: **Day/Night Display**	44
: **Address Book Icon Display**	41

Navigation menu

Shortcut menu

- The shortcuts displayed onscreen can be changed. The shortcuts described here are those that can be selected with the system as default setting.
- Items marked with an asterisk (*) cannot be removed from Shortcut menu.

➲ For details, refer to *Selecting the Shortcut* on page 42

Shortcut menu

	Page
: **Destination***	39
: **Route Options***	

Appendix

Menu in the Audio Screen

[Audio Settings] menu

	Page
Equalizer	123
Staging	125
FAD/BAL	125
Sub Woofer	126
Loudness	127
HPF	127
Source Level	127

[System Settings] menu

	Page
DVD-V Setup	128
Wide Mode	130
Camera Input	130
AV Input	131
AUX Input	131
Mute Set	131
Mute Level	132
Guide/Tel SP	132
Auto ANT	132
Clock DISP	133
REC Mode	133
Rear SP	133
Auto PI	134
FM Step	134
TV SIG	134

▣

Appendix

Glossary

3D Hybrid sensor
The built-in sensor which enables the system to estimate your vehicle's position. A learning function increases its accuracy and its learning data can be stored in memory.

Address Book
A list of locations registered manually.

Aspect ratio
This is the width-to-height ratio of a TV screen. A regular display has an aspect ratio of 4:3. Wide screen displays have an aspect ratio of 16:9, providing a bigger picture for exceptional presence and atmosphere.

Bit rate
This expresses data volume per second, or bps units (bits per second). The higher the rate, the more information is available to reproduce the sound. Using the same encoding method (such as MP3), the higher the rate, the better the sound.

Chapter
DVD titles are in turn divided into chapters which are numbered in the same way as the chapters of a book. With DVD-Video discs featuring chapters, you can quickly find a desired scene with chapter search.

Current location
The present location of your vehicle; your current location is shown on the map by a red triangle mark.

Default setting
A factory setting which applies when you first switch on the system; you can customise default settings to suit your own needs in the menu.

Destination
A location you choose as the end point of your journey.

Dolby Digital
Dolby Digital provides multi-channel audio from up to 5.1 independent channels. This is the same as the Dolby Digital surround sound system used in theatres.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

DTS
This stands for Digital Theatre Systems. DTS is a surround system delivering multi-channel audio from up to 6 independent channels.

"DTS" and "DTS Digital Out" are registered trademarks of DTS, Inc.

Favourite location
A frequently visited location (such as your workplace or a relative's home) that you can register to allow easy routing.

GPS
Global Positioning System. A network of satellites that provides navigation signals for a variety of purposes.

Appendix

Gracenote® Music recognition service
Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote®. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Guidance mode
The mode in which guidance is given as you drive to your destination; the system automatically switches to this mode as soon as a route has been set.

Guidance point
These are important landmarks along your route, generally intersections. The next guidance point along your route is indicated on the map by the yellow flag icon.

Home location
Your registered home location.

ID3 tag
This is a method of embedding track-related information in a MP3 file. This embedded information can include the track title, the artist's name, the album title, the music genre, the year of production, comments and other data. The contents can be freely edited using software with ID3 Tag editing functions. Although the tags are restricted to the number of characters, the information can be viewed when the track is played back.

ISO9660 format
This is the international standard for the format logic of DVD/CD-ROM folders and files. For the ISO9660 format, there are regulations for the following two levels:
Level 1:
The file name is in 8.3 format (the name consists of up to 8 characters, half-byte English capital letters, half-byte numerals and the "_" sign, with a file-extension of three characters).
Level 2:
The file name can have up to 31 characters (including the separation mark "." and a file extension). Each folder contains less than 8 hierarchies.
Extended formats
Joliet:
File names can have up to 64 characters.
Romeo:
File names can have up to 128 characters.

Linear PCM (LPCM)/Pulse code modulation
This stands for linear pulse code modulation, which is the signal recording system used for music CDs and DVDs. Generally, DVDs are recorded with higher sampling frequency and bit rate than CDs. Therefore, DVDs can provide higher sound quality.

m3u
Playlists created using the "WINAMP" software have a playlist file extension (.m3u).

Menu
A list of options shown on the display; choices are selected touching the display.

MP3
MP3 is short for MPEG Audio Layer 3. It is an audio compression standard set by a working group (MPEG) of the ISO (International Standards Organisation). MP3 is able to compress audio data to about 1/10th the size of a conventional disc.

MPEG
This stands for Moving Pictures Experts Group, and is an international video image compression standard. Some DVDs feature digital audio compressed and recorded using this system.

Appendix

Multi-angle
With regular TV programmes, although multiple cameras are used to simultaneously shoot scenes, only images from one camera at a time are transmitted to your TV. Some DVDs feature scenes shot from multiple angles, letting you choose your viewing angle as desired.

Multi-audio (Multilingual dialogue)
Some DVDs feature dialogue recorded in multiple languages. Dialogue in up to 8 languages can be recorded on a single disc, letting you choose as desired.

Multi-session
Multi-session is a recording method that allows additional data to be recorded later. When recording data on a CD-ROM, CD-R or CD-RW, etc., all data from beginning to end is treated as a single unit or session. Multi-session is a method of recording more than 2 sessions in one disc.

Multi-subtitle
Subtitles in up to 32 languages can be recorded on a single DVD, letting you choose as desired.

Optical digital output
By transmitting audio signals in a digital signal format, the chance of sonic quality deteriorating in the course of transmission is minimised. An optical digital output is designed to transmit digital signals optically.

Packet write
This is a general term for a method of writing on CD-R, etc. at the time required for a file, just as is done with files on floppy or hard discs.

Parental lock
Some DVD-Video discs with violent or adult-oriented scenes feature parental lock which prevents children from viewing such scenes. With this kind of disc, if you set the unit's parental lock level, playback of scenes inappropriate for children will be disabled, or these scenes will be skipped.

Point of Interest (POI)
Point Of Interest; any of a range of locations stored in the data, such as railway stations, shops, restaurants, and amusement parks.

Region number
DVD players and DVD discs feature region numbers indicating the area in which they were purchased. Playback of a DVD is not possible unless it features the same region number as the DVD player. The navigation system's region number is displayed on the bottom of the navigation unit.

Route setting
The process of determining the ideal route to a specific location; route setting is done automatically by the system when you specify a destination.

Set route
The route marked out by the system to your destination. It is highlighted in bright green on the map.

Title
DVD-Video discs have a high data capacity, enabling recording of multiple movies on a single disc. If, for example, one disc contains three separate movies, they are divided into title 1, title 2 and title 3. This lets you enjoy the convenience of title search and other functions.

Tracking
Marks on the map indicating the route you have travelled.

TV system (NTSC, PAL, SECAM)
Different areas of the world use different TV systems. North America uses NTSC, Europe uses PAL and SECAM, and South America uses PAL-M, PAL-N, PAL and NTSC.

Appendix

Almost all are incompatible with each other. To display the video image, such as TV or DVD-video correctly, you may need to coordinate your system at the same TV system or use a multi-system equipment.

VBR
VBR is short for variable bit rate. Generally speaking CBR (constant bit rate) is more widely used. But by flexibly adjusting the bit rate according to the needs of audio compression, it is possible to achieve compression priority sound quality.

Voice guidance
The giving of directions by a recorded voice while in guidance mode.

Voice recognition
The technology that allows the system to understand the driver's voice commands.

Waypoint
A location that you choose to visit before your destination; a journey can be built up from multiple waypoints and the destination.

0-9

3D hybrid mode 169
3D Hybrid Sensor 169
3D Landmark 42
3D POI 34

A

Active touch panel key 22
Address Book 55, 66
Address Search 23
AF 95
Album group 103
Artist group 103
Audio operation 81
Auto aerial 132
Auto fill-in function 24
Auto PI Seek 96
Auto reroute 19
Auto Reroute 175
AUX input 122
AV Guide Mode 45
AV Input 120
AV Settings menu 83
Average Speed 74

B

Background Picture 77
Backlight 136
Bluetooth unit 61
BSM 99
BSSM 119
Business card 67

C

Cancel Route 28
CD-R (-RW) 69, 77, 78
CD-TEXT 84, 100
Contacts 67
Current location 28

D

Dead reckoning 169
Default or Factory Settings 164
Demo Mode 79
Destination History 59
Dialled number history 65
Direct scale key 37
Distance study 76
Dolby Digital 182
DTS 182

E

Enlarged map of the intersection 35
Equaliser 123
Estimated time of arrival 36
External Unit 120

F

Favourite location 53
Frame-by-frame playback 89
Front display 174
Front Display 9

G

Genre group 103
GPS 168
Gracenote® Database ... 84, 100, 101, 103, 113
Guidance point 35

H

Handbrake interlock 18
Hands-free phoning 70
Hands-free Phoning 61
Hard Disk Drive 19, 174
Hard disk recording 84
Heading up 36
High pass filter 127
Home location 53

I

ID3 tag 87, 183
Inactive touch panel key 22
Incoming call 64
Installation angle 76
Interruption icon 95
IPod 115
ISO9660 format 183

J

Joliet 183
JPEG 79

K

Keyboard 24, 73

L

Language 72, 128, 142

Learning Route 30
Learning Status 75
Linear PCM 183
Location confirmation screen 26

M

M3u 183
Map Legend 44
Map matching 170
Map Mode 33
Mode1 79
MPEG 183
Multi Angle 129
Multiple routes 27
Multi-session 184
Music Library 100, 102
MUTE lead 131, 132
Muting/attenuation 131, 132
My Favorite group 103
My Mix 106

N

News programme 95
North up 36

P

Packet write 184
Parental lock 129, 184
Phone book 67
Phone Menu 61
Picture adjustment 135
Playlist 103, 141
POI 19, 46, 48, 140, 175
Postcode 50
Profile for the Bluetooth unit 61
Programme service name 91
PTY 94

Q

Q 124

R

Radio text 93
RDS 91
Rear display 134
Rear Display 9
Rear view camera 18, 130
Received call history 65
Region number 184
Roads without turn-by-turn instructions 37
Romeo 183
Route calculation condition 27
Route Calculation Conditions 28
Route confirmation screen 27

S

Scroll mode 38
Second Maneuver Arrow 42
Simple hybrid mode 158, 169
Simulated sound stage 125
Single-session 79
Slow-motion playback 89
Source 81
Speed Pulse 74, 75, 171
Speed pulse generator 171
Splash Screen 77, 79
Steering Remote Control 61, 82, 138
Street list screen 25
Street name or city name input screen 24
Stylus 168
Subwoofer 126, 133

T

Text box 24
Time difference 73
Time restrictions 29
Touch Panel Calibration 167
TP or another enhanced network's TP station 94
Tracking 175
Tracking Display 41
Traffic announcements 94
Travel time 36
TV signal 134
TV system 184

U

Unit of distance and speed 73

V

VBR 88, 185
Vehicle Dynamics Display 39
Video image 9
View mode 33
Voice Commands 142
Voice Help menu 139

Voice Operation 138
Volume 72

W

Waypoint 35
Waypoints 31
Wide screen mode 130

http://www.pioneer.eu

Visit **www.pioneer.co.uk** (or **www.pioneer.eu**) to register your product.
Visite **www.pioneer.es** (o **www.pioneer.eu**) para registrar su producto.
Zum Registrieren Ihres Produktes besuchen Sie bitte **www.pioneer.de** (oder **www.pioneer.eu**).
Visitez **www.pioneer.fr** (ou **www.pioneer.eu**) pour enregistrer votre appareil.
Si prega di visitare il sito **www.pioneer.it** (o **www.pioneer.eu**) per registrare il prodotto.
Bezoek **www.pioneer.nl** (of **www.pioneer.eu**) om uw product te registreren.
Посетите **www.pioneer-rus.ru** (или **www.pioneer.eu**) для регистрации приобретенного Вами изделия.

PIONEER CORPORATION
4-1, MEGURO 1-CHOME, MEGURO-KU
TOKYO 153-8654, JAPAN

Корпорация Пайонир
4-1, Мегуро 1-Чоме, Мегуро-ку, Токио
153-8654, Япония

PIONEER ELECTRONICS (USA) INC.
P.O. Box 1540, Long Beach, California 90801-1540, U.S.A.
TEL: (800) 421-1404

PIONEER EUROPE NV
Haven 1087, Keetberglaan 1, B-9120 Melsele, Belgium
TEL: (0) 3/570.05.11

Published by Pioneer Corporation.
Copyright © 2008 by Pioneer Corporation.
All rights reserved.

Printed in China
<KSKZX> <08F00000>
<CRB2643-B/U> RE